

FOREWORD

Welcome to the growing group of value-conscious people who drive Lexus vehicles. We are proud of the advanced engineering and quality construction of each vehicle we build.

This Owner's Manual explains the features of your new Lexus. Please read it and follow the instructions carefully so that you can enjoy many years of safe motoring.

When it comes to service, remember that your Lexus dealer knows your vehicle best and is interested in your complete satisfaction. Your Lexus dealer will provide quality maintenance and any other assistance you may require.

If there is not a Lexus dealer near you, or you need emergency assistance for any reason, please call the following number:

U.S. OWNERS

- When traveling in the U.S. mainland or Canada:
Lexus Roadside Assistance 1-800-25-LEXUS (Toll-Free)
(1-800-255-3987)
- HAWAII:
Lexus Customer Service Assistance 1-800-25-LEXUS (Toll-Free)
(1-800-255-3987)

CANADIAN OWNERS

- Please refer to the "Owner's Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement".

Please leave this Owner's Manual in this vehicle at the time of resale. The next owner will need this information also.

All information and specifications in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

INTRODUCTION

New vehicle warranty

Your new vehicle is covered by the following Lexus limited warranties:

- New vehicle warranty
- Emission control systems warranty
- Others

For further information, please refer to the “Owner’s Guide”, “Owner’s Manual Supplement” or “Warranty Booklet”.

Your responsibility for maintenance

It is the owner’s responsibility to make sure the specified maintenance is performed. Section 5 of this Owner’s Manual gives details of these maintenance requirements. Included in Section 6 is general maintenance. For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Owner’s Manual Supplement / Maintenance Schedule”.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non–genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Lexus vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non–genuine Lexus products. Modification with non–genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Spark ignition system of your Lexus

The spark ignition system in your Lexus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference–Causing Equipment Standard.

Installation of a mobile two–way radio system

As the installation of a mobile two–way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as the multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, cruise control system, anti–lock brake system, SRS airbag system and seat belt pretensioner system, be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation.

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

The contents of this manual are explained briefly on this page to help you make the best use of the manual. Please read this page and the rest of the Owner's Manual carefully to make sure you fully understand the operation of your vehicle.

This will help you enjoy safe and comfortable driving.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

The table of contents and the pictorial index provide easy reference to the appropriate pages.

BASIC OPERATION – QUICK REFERENCE

Operation of basic equipment is briefly explained in an easily understandable way for quick reference.

SECTION 1 – INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

The vehicle's equipment is divided into the 7 groups listed below. Use of the equipment is explained, including any points you should pay particular attention to.

1. Keys and doors
2. Switches
3. Gauges, meters and service reminder indicators
4. Interior equipment
5. Exterior equipment
6. Comfort adjustment
7. Theft deterrent

SECTION 2 – AIR CONDITIONING AND AUDIO

The features of the vehicle's air conditioning and audio are explained in detail. Be sure to read this section so that you can make full use of them.

SECTION 3 – STARTING AND DRIVING

Starting the engine, driving, stopping, operation of features affecting vehicle handling, hints on vehicle safety and safe driving techniques are all explained. Please read everything in this section, and remember – drive safely!

SECTION 4 – IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

This section explains what to do in the event of an urgent situation such as the engine not starting or getting a flat tire, etc. If such a problem occurs, check the contents of this Owner's Manual and follow the instructions given.

SECTION 5 – MAINTENANCE

This section explains the importance of regular maintenance. Regular and periodic inspection and maintenance of your Lexus will help to keep your vehicle in its best condition.

SECTION 6 – SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS

Simple maintenance procedure and service data are provided here for your reference should you wish to perform inspection and maintenance yourself.

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

INDEX

The page number is listed for each item in the Owner's Manual so that you can rapidly find the item and page you are searching for.

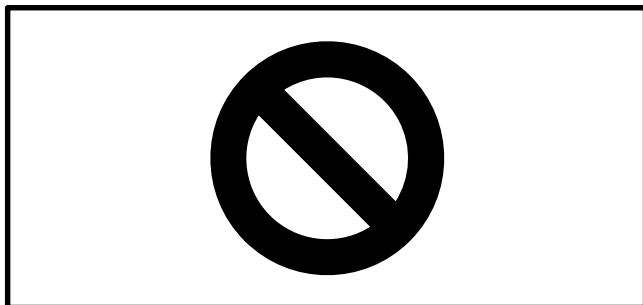
GAS STATION INFORMATION

The information you need to know for appropriate servicing at the gas station is provided here.

QUICK INDEX

This is designed so that you can quickly find the needed information when an urgent situation arises.

Safety symbol



In this manual, you will also see a circle with a slash through it. This means "Do not", "Do not do this", or "Do not let this happen".

Safety and vehicle damage warnings

In this manual you will see CAUTION and NOTICE warnings. These are used in the following ways:



CAUTION

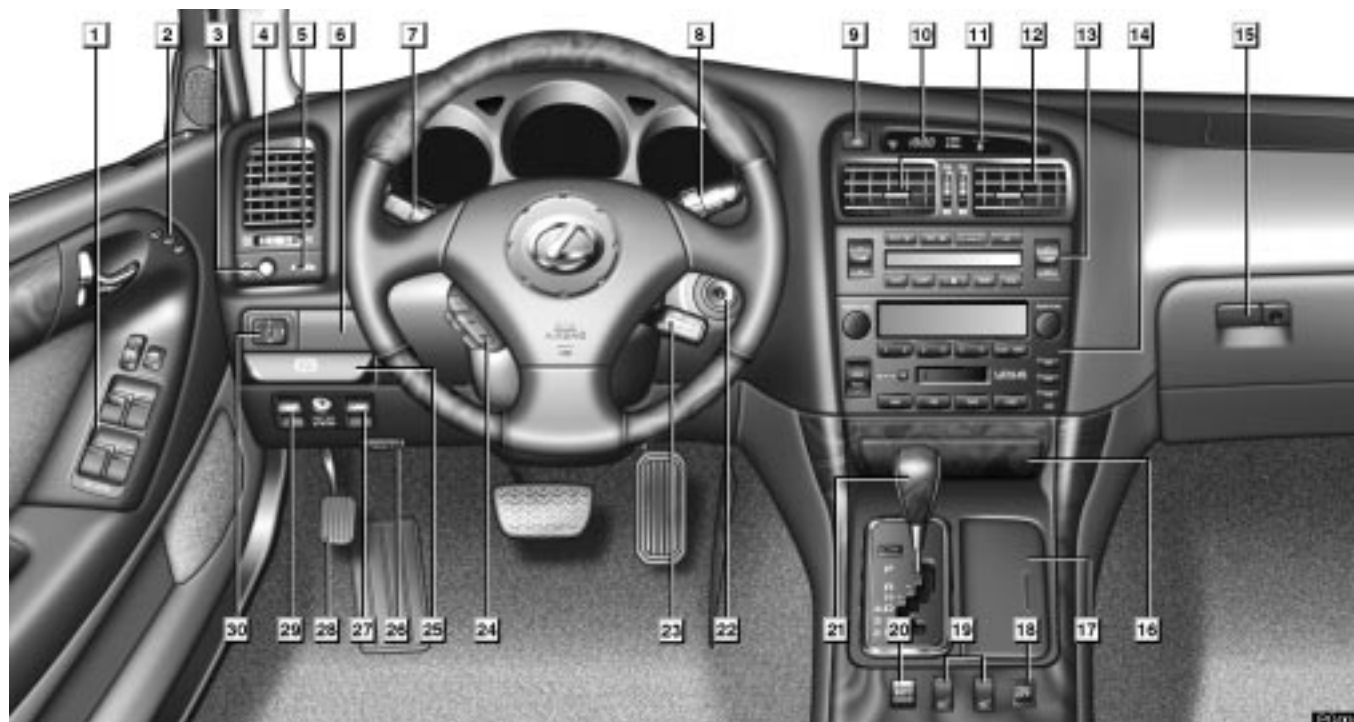
This is a warning against something which may cause injury to people if the warning is ignored. You are informed what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk to yourself and other people.

NOTICE

This is a warning against something which may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment if the warning is ignored. You are informed what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.

Your Lexus Owner's Manual provides you with a considerable amount of information. To use this information most effectively, please take the time to familiarize yourself with the contents and use of the manual.

INSTRUMENT PANEL



PICTORIAL INDEX

	<i>Page</i>		<i>Page</i>
1 Door lock switch and power window switches	20, 32	16 Ashtray	55
2 Driving position memory switch	127	17 Cup holders	60
3 Instrument panel light control	50	18 Vehicle skid control system OFF switch	193
4 Side vents	144	19 Seat heater switches	35
5 Security indicator light	130	20 Driving pattern selector switch	179
6 Coin box	61	21 Automatic transmission selector lever	179
7 Headlight, turn signal and fog light switch	24, 26, 27	22 Ignition switch	176
8 Wiper and washer switch	28	23 Cruise control switch	189
9 Emergency flasher switch	35	24 Steering pad switch	166
10 Clock	54	25 Parking brake release lever	177
11 Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	43	26 Hood lock release lever	66
12 Center vents	144	27 Trunk lid opener	67
13 Automatic air conditioning controls	134	28 Parking brake	177
14 Car audio	148	29 Fuel filler door opener	69
15 Glove box/CD automatic changer	57/161	30 Power rear view mirror control switch	81

For detailed information, refer to the description given in each section.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (GS430 sold in U. S. A.)



PICTORIAL INDEX

	<i>Page</i>		<i>Page</i>
1	<i>Tachometer</i>	16	<i>Driver's seat belt reminder light</i>
2	<i>Turn signal indicator light</i>	17	<i>SRS warning light</i>
3	<i>Odometer and trip meter</i>	18	<i>Open door warning light</i>
4	<i>Engine coolant temperature gauge</i>	19	<i>Vehicle skid control system OFF indicator light</i>
5	<i>Automatic transmission indicator lights</i>	20	<i>Anti-lock brake system warning light</i>
6	<i>Fuel gauge</i>	21	<i>Vehicle skid control system warning light</i>
7	<i>ODO/TRIP, RESET button</i>	22	<i>Snow mode indicator light</i>
8	<i>Low fuel level warning light</i>	23	<i>Power mode indicator light</i>
9	<i>Headlight indicator light</i>	24	<i>Cruise control indicator light</i>
10	<i>Headlight high beam indicator light</i>	25	<i>Rear light failure warning light</i>
11	<i>Slip indicator light</i>	26	<i>Automatic headlight leveling system warning light</i>
12	<i>Low washer fluid warning light</i>	27	<i>Low engine oil level warning light</i>
13	<i>Brake system warning light</i>	28	<i>Malfunction indicator lamp</i>
14	<i>Low oil pressure warning light</i>		
15	<i>Discharge warning light</i>		

For detailed information, refer to the description given in each section.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (GS300 sold in U. S. A.)



PICTORIAL INDEX

	<i>Page</i>		<i>Page</i>
1 Tachometer	40	16 Discharge warning light	44
2 Turn signal indicator light	26	17 Driver's seat belt reminder light	43
3 Shift position indicator for manual control	183	18 SRS warning light	44
4 Odometer and trip meter	40	19 Open door warning light	47
5 Engine coolant temperature gauge	39	20 Vehicle skid control system OFF indicator light	193
6 Automatic transmission indicator lights	179	21 Anti-lock brake system warning light	46
7 Fuel gauge	38	22 Vehicle skid control system warning light	194
8 ODO/TRIP, RESET button	40	23 Snow mode indicator light	188
9 Low fuel level warning light	47	24 Power mode indicator light	188
10 Headlight indicator light	24	25 Cruise control indicator light	189
11 Headlight high beam indicator light	26	26 Rear light failure warning light	47
12 Slip indicator light	192, 193	27 Automatic headlight leveling system warning light	26
13 Low washer fluid warning light	47	28 Low engine oil level warning light	45
14 Brake system warning light	42	29 Malfunction indicator lamp	46
15 Low oil pressure warning light	45		

For detailed information, refer to the description given in each section.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (GS430 sold in Canada)



PICTORIAL INDEX

	<i>Page</i>		<i>Page</i>
1	<i>Tachometer</i>	16	<i>Driver's seat belt reminder light</i>
	40		43
2	<i>Turn signal indicator light</i>	17	<i>SRS warning light</i>
	26		44
3	<i>Odometer and trip meter</i>	18	<i>Open door warning light</i>
	40		47
4	<i>Engine coolant temperature gauge</i>	19	<i>Vehicle skid control system OFF</i>
	39		<i>indicator light</i>
5	<i>Automatic transmission indicator lights</i>		193
	179	20	<i>Anti-lock brake system warning light</i>
6	<i>Fuel gauge</i>		46
	38	21	<i>Vehicle skid control system</i>
7	<i>ODO/TRIP, RESET button</i>		<i>warning light</i>
	40		194
8	<i>Low fuel level warning light</i>	22	<i>Snow mode indicator light</i>
	47		188
9	<i>Tail light indicator light</i>	23	<i>Power mode indicator light</i>
	24		188
10	<i>Headlight high beam indicator light</i>	24	<i>Cruise control indicator light</i>
	26		189
11	<i>Slip indicator light</i>	25	<i>Rear light failure warning light</i>
	192, 193		47
12	<i>Low washer fluid warning light</i>	26	<i>Automatic headlight leveling system</i>
	47		<i>warning light</i>
13	<i>Brake system warning light</i>		26
	42	27	<i>Low engine oil level warning light</i>
14	<i>Low oil pressure warning light</i>		45
	45	28	<i>Malfunction indicator lamp</i>
15	<i>Discharge warning light</i>		46
	44		

For detailed information, refer to the description given in each section.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (GS300 sold in Canada)

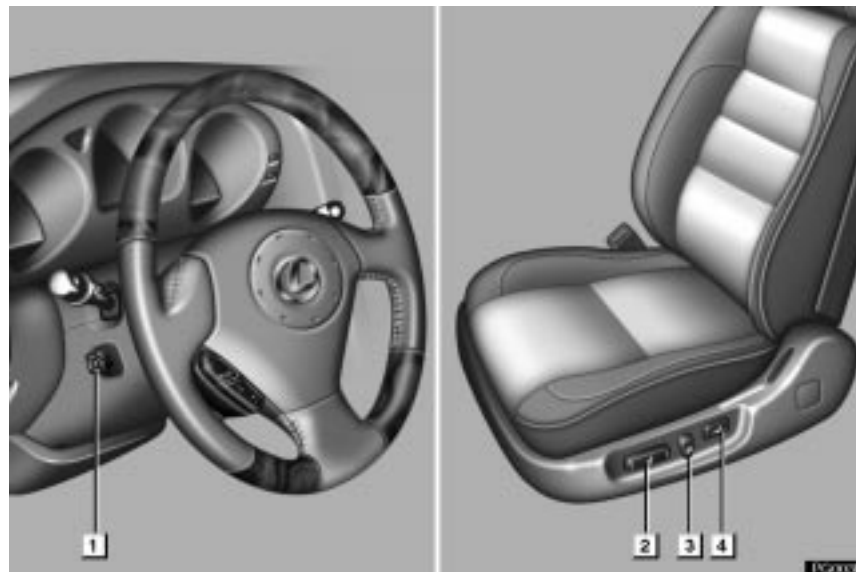


PICTORIAL INDEX

	<i>Page</i>		<i>Page</i>
1 Tachometer	40	16 Discharge warning light	44
2 Turn signal indicator light	26	17 Driver's seat belt reminder light	43
3 Shift position indicator for manual control	183	18 SRS warning light	44
4 Odometer and trip meter	40	19 Open door warning light	47
5 Engine coolant temperature gauge	39	20 Vehicle skid control system OFF indicator light	193
6 Automatic transmission indicator lights	179	21 Anti-lock brake system warning light	46
7 Fuel gauge	38	22 Vehicle skid control system warning light	194
8 ODO/TRIP, RESET button	40	23 Snow mode indicator light	188
9 Low fuel level warning light	47	24 Power mode indicator light	188
10 Tail light indicator light	24	25 Cruise control indicator light	189
11 Headlight high beam indicator light	26	26 Rear light failure warning light	47
12 Slip indicator light	192, 193	27 Automatic headlight leveling system warning light	26
13 Low washer fluid warning light	47	28 Low engine oil level warning light	45
14 Brake system warning light	42	29 Malfunction indicator lamp	46
15 Low oil pressure warning light	45		

For detailed information, refer to the description given in each section.

SEAT AND STEERING WHEEL



Page

- 1** *Tilt and telescopic steering adjustment switch 79*
- 2** *Seat position, seat cushion angle and height control switch 75, 76*
- 3** *Seatback angle control switch . . . 76*
- 4** *Lumbar support control switch . . 77*

For detailed information, refer to the description given in each section.

PICTORIAL INDEX

EXTERIOR VIEW



	<i>Page</i>
1 Rear window defogger	31
2 Trunk lid	67
3 Moon roof	70
4 Wiper and washer	28, 290
5 Fuel filler door	69
6 Outside rear view mirror	80
7 Door	19
8 Tire and wheel	271
9 Headlights	24, 293
10 Hood	66

For detailed information, refer to the description given in each section.

2

SECTION 4

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

If your engine stalls while driving	208
If your vehicle will not start	208
If your vehicle overheats	213
If you have a flat tire	214
If your vehicle needs to be towed	220
If you cannot shift automatic transmission selector lever	225
If you lose your keys or lock yourself out	226

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

IF YOUR ENGINE STALLS WHILE DRIVING

If your engine stalls while driving

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try starting the engine again.

If the engine will not start, see "If your vehicle will not start".



CAUTION

If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not work, so steering and braking will be much harder than usual.

IF YOUR VEHICLE WILL NOT START

(a) Simple checks

Before making these checks, make sure you have followed the correct starting procedure instructions in "How to start the engine" on page 178 and that you have sufficient fuel. Since your vehicle is equipped with the engine immobiliser system, also check whether the other keys will start the engine. If they work, your key may be broken. Have the key checked at your Lexus dealer. If none of your keys work, the system is possibly broken. Call your Lexus dealer. See "Keys" on page 8.

If the engine is not turning over or is turning over too slowly –

1. Check that the battery terminals are tight and clean.
2. If the battery terminals are O.K., switch on the interior light.
3. If the light is out, dim or goes out when the starter is cranked, the battery is discharged. You may try jump starting. See "(c) Jump starting" for further instruction.

If the light is O.K., but the engine still will not start, it needs adjustment or repair. Call a Lexus dealer, Roadside Assistance or Customer Service Assistance. (See "Foreword".)

NOTICE

Do not pull- or push-start the vehicle. It may damage the vehicle or cause a collision when the engine starts. Also the three-way catalytic converter may overheat and become a fire hazard.

If the engine turns over at its normal speed but will not start –

1. The engine may be flooded because of repeated cranking. See "(b) Starting a flooded engine" for further instructions.
2. If the engine still will not start, it needs adjustment or repair. Call a Lexus dealer, Roadside Assistance or Customer Service Assistance. (See "Foreword".)

(b) Starting a flooded engine

If the engine will not start, your engine may be flooded because of repeated cranking.

If this happens, turn the key to "START" with the accelerator pedal held down. Continue this operation for 30 seconds and then stop cranking. Then try starting the engine with your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If the engine does not start after 30 seconds of cranking, release the key, wait a few minutes and try again.

If the engine still will not start, it needs adjustment or repair. Call a Lexus dealer, Roadside Assistance or Customer Service Assistance. (See "Foreword".)

NOTICE

Do not crank for more than 30 seconds at a time. This may overheat the starter and wiring systems.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

(c) Jump starting

To avoid serious personal injury and damage to your vehicle which might result from battery explosion, acid burns, electrical burns, or damaged electronic components, these instructions must be followed precisely.

If you are unsure about how to follow this procedure, we strongly recommend that you seek help from your Lexus dealer, Roadside Assistance or Customer Service Assistance. (See "Foreword").

NOTICE

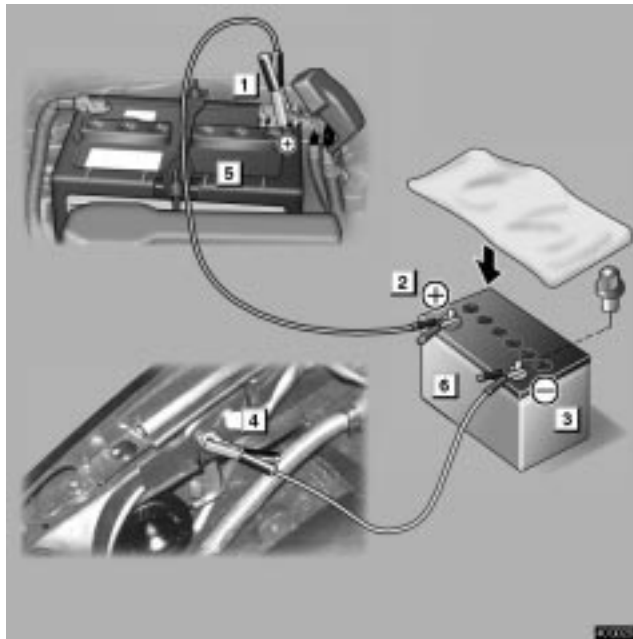
The battery used for boosting must be 12 V. Do not jump start unless you are sure that the booster battery is correct.



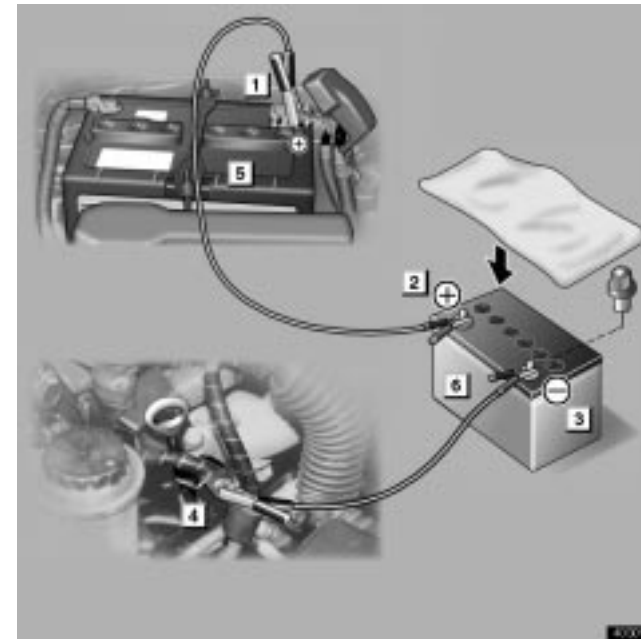
CAUTION

- Batteries contain sulfuric acid which is poisonous and corrosive. Wear protective safety glasses when jump starting, and avoid spilling acid on your skin, clothing, or vehicle.
- If you should accidentally get acid on yourself or in your eyes, remove any contaminated clothing and flush the affected area with water immediately. Then get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while en route to the medical office.
- The gas normally produced by a battery will explode if a flame or spark is brought near. Use only standardized jumper cables and do not smoke or light a match while jump starting.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY



► **GS430** [5] *Discharged battery* [6] *Booster battery*



► **GS300** [5] *Discharged battery* [6] *Booster battery*

JUMP STARTING PROCEDURE

1. If the booster battery is installed in another vehicle, make sure the vehicles are not touching. Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

2. If required, remove all the vent plugs from the booster battery. Lay a cloth over the open vents on the booster battery. (This helps reduce the explosion hazard, personal injuries and burns.)

If the booster battery is an extended maintenance interval battery, it is not necessary to remove the vent plugs.

3. If the engine in the vehicle with the booster battery is not running, start it and let it run for about 5 minutes. During jump starting, run the engine at about 2000 rpm with the accelerator pedal lightly depressed.

4. Locate positive (+) and negative (–) terminals of each battery. Connect the jumper cables in the exact order (**1** **2** **3** **4**) shown in the illustration.

- 1** Connect a positive (red) jumper cable clamp to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
- 2** Connect the clamp at the other end of the positive (red) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster battery.
- 3** Connect a negative (black) cable clamp to the negative (–) terminal of the booster battery.
- 4** Connect the clamp at the other end of the negative (black) cable to a solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point (such as shown in the illustration) away from the battery. Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked.

CAUTION

When making the connections, to avoid serious injury, do not lean over the battery or accidentally let the jumper cables or clamps touch anything except the correct battery terminals or the ground.

5. Start your engine in the normal way. After starting, run it at about 2000 rpm for several minutes with the accelerator pedal lightly depressed.

6. Carefully disconnect the cables in the exact reverse order: the negative cable and then the positive cable.

7. Carefully dispose of the battery cover cloths which may now contain sulfuric acid.

8. If removed, replace all the battery vent plugs.

If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent (for example, lights left on), you should have it checked.

IF YOUR VEHICLE OVERHEATS

If your engine coolant temperature gauge indicates overheating, if you experience a loss of power, or if you hear a loud knocking or pinging noise, the engine has probably overheated.

When the engine overheats

Pull safely off the road, stop the vehicle and turn on your emergency flashers. Put the transmission in "P" and apply the parking brake.

A: If steam is coming from your engine:

Turn off the engine. Leave the hood closed until there is no sign of steam or coolant. Your engine could have been seriously damaged already. Call your Lexus dealer for assistance.



To help avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until there is no steam. Escaping steam or coolant is sign of very high pressure.

B: If no steam is coming from your engine:

Leave the engine running and turn off the air conditioning. Check the following.

- Is the cooling fan operating?
- Is the coolant in the acceptable range?
- Is the engine drive belt O.K.?



CAUTION

- **When the engine is running, keep hands and clothing away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.**
- **Do not attempt to remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injury could result from scalding hot fluid and steam blown out under pressure.**

If the cooling fan is not operating or the coolant is not in the acceptable range, turn off the engine and call your Lexus dealer.

If both conditions are O.K., after the engine coolant temperature has cooled to normal, continue driving your vehicle.

If the engine coolant temperature does not cool down, or your vehicle overheats again, have it checked as soon as possible by your Lexus dealer.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place – well away from the traffic. Avoid stopping on the center divider of a highway. Park on a level spot with firm ground.
2. Stop the engine and turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Firmly set the parking brake and put the transmission in "P".
4. Have everyone get out of the vehicle on the side away from traffic.
5. Read the following instructions thoroughly.



CAUTION

When jacking, be sure to observe the following to reduce the possibility of personal injury:

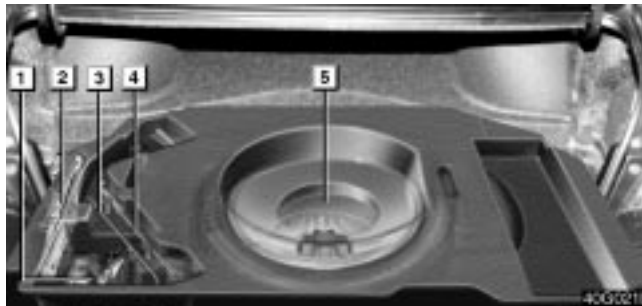
- Follow jacking instructions.
- Do not put any part of your body under a vehicle supported by a jack. Personal injury may occur.
- Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.

- Stop the vehicle on a level firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and put the transmission in "P". Block the wheel diagonally opposite to the one being changed if necessary.
- Make sure to set the jack properly in the jack point. Raising the vehicle with jack improperly positioned will damage the vehicle or may allow the vehicle to fall off the jack and cause personal injury.
- Never get under the vehicle when the vehicle is supported by the jack alone.
- Use the jack only for lifting your vehicle during wheel changing.
- Do not raise the vehicle with someone in the vehicle.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Raise the vehicle only high enough to remove and change the tire.

NOTICE

Do not continue driving with a deflated tire. Driving even a short distance can damage a tire and wheel beyond repair.

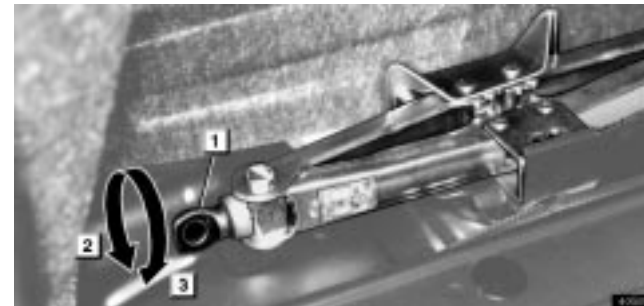
IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY



- **1 Tool bag** **2 Jack** **3 Wrench** **4 Jack handle**
5 Spare tire

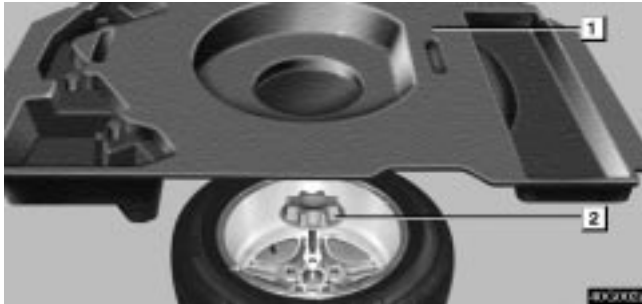
1. Get the jack, wrench and spare tire.

To prepare yourself for an emergency, you should familiarize yourself with the use of the jack and each tool, and their storage locations.



- **1 Joint**
- 2** When removing the jack, turn the joint by hand in the "contract" direction until the jack is free.
 - 3** When storing, turn the joint by hand in the "expand" direction until the jack is firmly secured to prevent it from flying forward during a collision or sudden braking.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY



To remove the spare tire:

- 1** Remove the luggage tray.
- 2** Loosen the bolt and remove it.

When storing the spare tire, place it with the inner side of the wheel facing up. Then bolt the tire in place and install the luggage tool box to prevent the tire from flying forward during a collision or sudden braking.



2. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire to keep the vehicle from rolling when it is jacked up.

When blocking the wheel, place a wheel block in front of the front wheels or behind the rear wheels.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

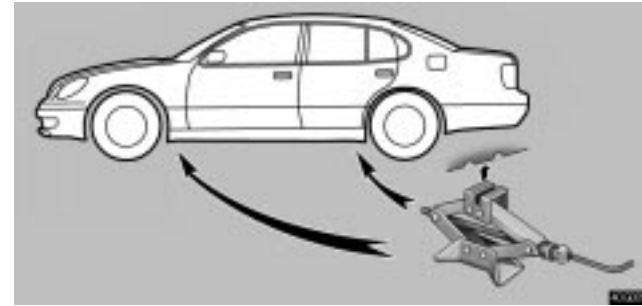


3. Loosen all the wheel nuts.

Always loosen the wheel nuts before raising the vehicle.

Turn the wheel nuts counterclockwise to loosen them. To get maximum leverage, fit the wrench to the nut so that the handle is on the right side, as shown above. Grab the wrench near the end of the handle and pull up on the handle. Be careful that the wrench does not slip off the nut.

Do not remove the nuts yet – just unscrew them about one-half turn.



4. Position the jack at the jack points as shown.

Make sure the jack is positioned on a level and solid surface.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY



5. After making sure no one is in the vehicle, raise it high enough so that the spare tire can be installed.

Allow for the fact that you need more ground clearance when putting on the spare tire than when removing the flat tire.

To raise the vehicle, insert the jack handle into the jack (it is a loose fit) and turn it clockwise. As the jack touches the vehicle and begins to lift, double-check that it is properly positioned.



CAUTION

Never get under the vehicle when the vehicle is supported by the jack alone.



6. Remove the wheel nuts and remove the flat tire.

Lift the flat tire straight off and put it aside.



Before putting on the wheel, remove any corrosion on the mounting surfaces with a wire brush or such. Installation of wheels without good metal-to-metal contact at the mounting surface can cause wheel nuts to loosen and eventually cause a wheel to come off while driving.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY



7. Reinstall all the wheel nuts finger tight.

Align the holes in the wheel with the bolts. Then lift up the wheel and get at least the top bolt started through its hole. Wiggle the tire and press it back over the other bolts.

Reinstall the wheel nuts and tighten them as much as you can by hand. Press the tire back and see if you can tighten them more.



8. Lower the vehicle completely and tighten the wheel nuts.

Turn the jack handle counterclockwise to lower the vehicle.

Use only the wheel nut wrench to tighten the nuts. Do not use other tools or any additional leverage other than your hands, such as a hammer, pipe or your foot. Make sure the wrench is securely engaged over the nut.

Tighten each nut a little at a time in the order shown. Repeat the process until all the nuts are tight.



CAUTION

- When lowering the vehicle, make sure all portions of your body and all other persons around will not be injured as the vehicle is lowered to the ground.
- As soon as possible after changing wheels, have the wheel nuts tightened by torque wrench at 103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 76 ft·lbf.).

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

9. After changing the wheel, check the air pressure of the replaced tire. Stow all the tools, jack and flat tire securely.

If the pressure of the replaced tire is low, drive slowly to the nearest service station and fill to the correct pressure.

Do not forget to reinstall the tire valve cap as dirt and moisture could get into the valve core and possibly cause air leakage. If the cap is missing, put a new one on as soon as possible.

This is the same procedure for changing or rotating your tires.



CAUTION

- **When reinstalling a standard tire, take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.**
- **Before driving, make sure all the tools, jack and flat tire are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.**

IF YOUR VEHICLE NEEDS TO BE TOWED

If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by your Lexus dealer or a commercial tow truck service. In consultation with them, have your vehicle towed using either (a) or (b).

(a) Towing with a wheel lift type truck

(b) Using a flat bed truck

(c) Never tow with a sling type truck

Only when you cannot receive a towing service from a Lexus dealer or commercial tow truck service, tow your vehicle carefully in accordance with the instructions given in "(d) Emergency towing" on page 224.

Proper equipment will help ensure that your vehicle is not damaged while being towed. Commercial operators are generally aware of the state/provincial and local laws pertaining to towing.

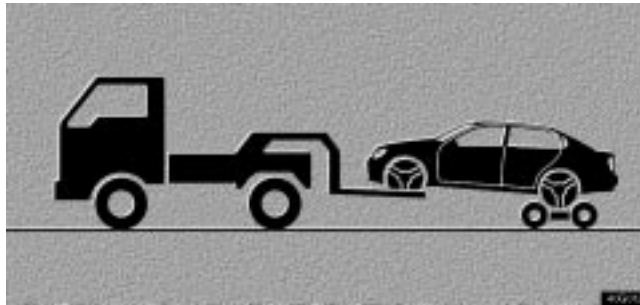
Your vehicle can be damaged if it is towed incorrectly. Although most operators know the correct procedure, it is possible to make a mistake. To avoid damage to your vehicle, make sure the following precautions are observed. If necessary, show this page to the tow truck driver.

TOWING PRECAUTIONS:

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by the state/provincial and local laws. The wheels and axle on the ground must be in good condition. If they are damaged, use a towing dolly.

(a) Towing with a wheel lift type truck

- From front



Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

NOTICE

Never tow a vehicle with an automatic transmission from the front with rear wheels on the ground, as this may cause serious damage to the transmission.

- From rear



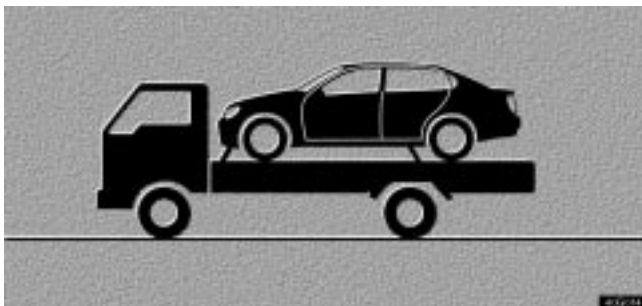
Place the ignition key in the "ACC" position.

NOTICE

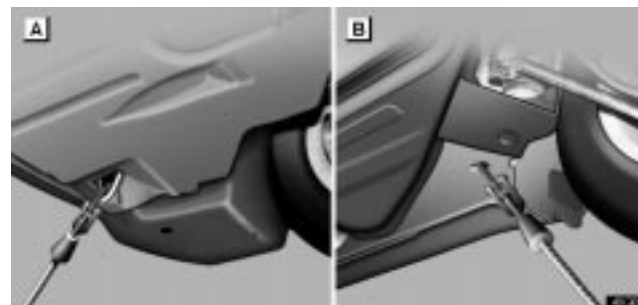
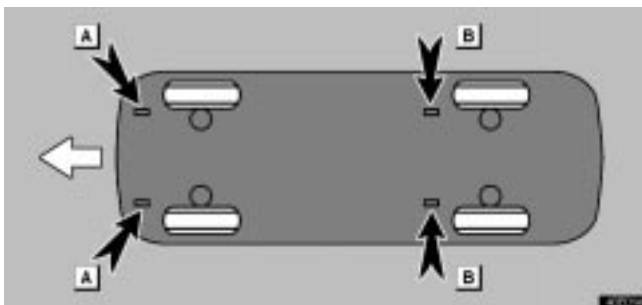
- *Do not tow with the key removed or in the "LOCK" position, as the steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.*
- *When lifting wheels, take care to ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Otherwise, the bumper and/or underbody of the towed vehicle will be damaged during towing.*

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

(b) Using a flat bed truck



- Tie down points



If your Lexus is transported by a flat bed, it should be tied down at locations A and B as shown above.

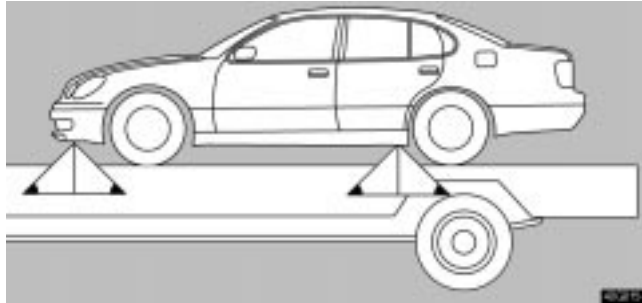


► *Rear emergency towing eyelets*

NOTICE

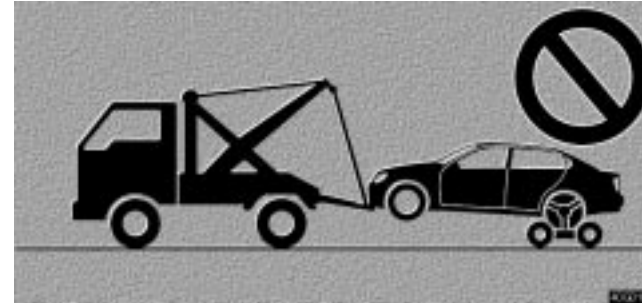
Do not use the rear emergency towing eyelets.

- Tie down angle



If you use chains or wires to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded black must be at 45°.

(c) Towing with a sling type truck



NOTICE

Do not tow with a sling type truck, either from the front or rear. This may cause body damage.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

(d) Emergency towing



If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by your Lexus dealer or a commercial tow truck service.

If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed by a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing eyelet. Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speeds. Also, the wheels, axles, drive train, steering and brakes must all be in good condition.

CAUTION

Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle. Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which would place excessive stress on the emergency towing eyelet and towing cable or chain. The eyelet and towing cable or chain may break and cause serious injury or damage.

NOTICE

Use only a cable or chain specifically intended for use in towing vehicles. Securely fasten the cable or chain to the towing eyelet provided.

Before towing, release the parking brake and put the transmission in "N". The ignition key must be in "ACC" (engine off) or "ON" (engine running).

CAUTION

If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not work so steering and braking will be much harder than usual.

IF YOU CANNOT SHIFT AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION SELECTOR LEVER



If you cannot shift the selector lever, use the shift lock override button as follows:

- 1 Turn the ignition key to "LOCK" or "ACC". Make sure the parking brake is applied. Pry up the cover with a flat-bladed screwdriver or equivalent.



- 2 Insert your finger, the screwdriver or equivalent into the hole to push down the shift lock override button. You can shift the selector lever while pushing the button.

For your safety, keep the brake pedal depressed.

Be sure to have the system checked by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

IF YOU LOSE YOUR KEYS OR LOCK YOURSELF OUT

You can purchase a new key at your Lexus dealer if you can give them the key number and master key.

Even if you lose only one key, contact your Lexus dealer to make a new key. If you lose all your master keys, you cannot make new keys; the whole engine immobiliser system must be replaced.

See the suggestion given in “Keys” on page 8.

You can use the wireless remote control system with the new key. Contact your Lexus dealer for detailed information.

If your keys are locked in the vehicle and you cannot get a duplicate, many Lexus dealers can still open the door for you, using their special tools. If you must break a window to get in, we suggest breaking the smallest side window because it is the least expensive to replace. Be extremely cautious to avoid cuts from the glass.

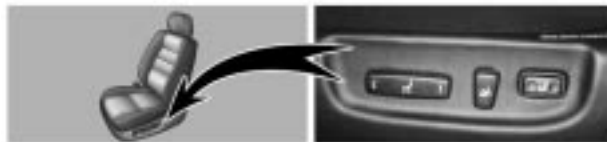
BASIC OPERATION

QUICK REFERENCE

Driver's seat	2
Steering wheel	2
Automatic transmission (GS430)	3
Automatic transmission (GS300)	4
Headlight and turn signal switch	5
Wiper switch	6

BASIC OPERATION – QUICK REFERENCE

1. DRIVER'S SEAT

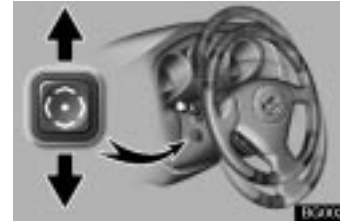


Seat adjustment

	Seat position		
	Seat cushion angle		
			
	Seat cushion height		
	Seatback angle		
	Lumbar support		
	Head restraint height		
	Head restraint angle		

2. STEERING WHEEL

• TILT STEERING WHEEL



To tilt the steering wheel up or down to the desired angle, push the control switch in the required direction and release the button when the steering wheel reaches the desired angle.

• TELESCOPIC STEERING WHEEL



To move the steering wheel to the desired position, push the control switch away from you or pull it toward you until the steering wheel reaches the desired position.

3. AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (GS430)



SELECTOR LEVER POSITION

- P:** Parking, engine starting and key removal
- R:** Reverse
- N:** Neutral
- D:** Normal driving (with overdrive on)
- 4:** Engine braking*
- 3, 2:** Stronger engine braking
- L:** Maximum engine braking

OPERATION OF SELECTOR LEVER



- ★ Shift while pressing the brake pedal. (Ignition switch must be in the "ON" position.)

*When the cruise control is being used, even if you downshift from "D" to "4", engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. For the operation to decrease the vehicle speed, see page 191.

BASIC OPERATION – QUICK REFERENCE

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION(GS300)



SELECTOR LEVER POSITION

- P:** Parking, engine starting and key removal
- R:** Reverse
- N:** Neutral
- D:** Normal driving (with overdrive on)
- M:** Manual shifting up or down shifting*
- 3, 2:** Stronger engine braking
- L:** Maximum engine braking

OPERATION OF SELECTOR LEVER



- ★ Shift while pressing the brake pedal. (Ignition switch must be in the "ON" position.)

*When the cruise control is being used, even if you downshift from "D" to "4", engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. For the operation to decrease the vehicle speed, see page 191.

4. HEADLIGHT AND TURN SIGNAL SWITCH

• HEADLIGHT SWITCH

With the ignition OFF

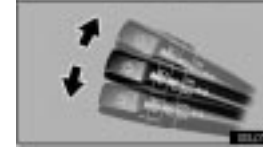
	Parking, tail, license plate, side marker and instrument panel lights turn on.
	Headlights also turn on.
	Automatic light control

With the engine started and parking brake released

	Parking, tail, license plate, side marker and instrument panel lights turn on.
	Headlights also turn on at full intensity.
	Automatic light control

	High beam
	Headlight flasher

• TURN SIGNAL SWITCH

	Right or left turn
	Lane change (Right or left)

BASIC OPERATION – QUICK REFERENCE

5. WIPER SWITCH

	Mist wiper operation
	Intermittent operation
	Low speed operation
	High speed operation
	Washer on

SECTION 5

MAINTENANCE

Maintenance requirements	228
General maintenance	229
Does your vehicle need repairing?	232

For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Scheduled Maintenance Guide” or “Owner’s Manual Supplement”.

MAINTENANCE

MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS

Your Lexus vehicle has been designed for fewer maintenance requirements with longer service intervals to save both your time and money. However, each regular maintenance as well as day-to-day care is more important than ever before to ensure smooth, trouble-free, safe, and economical driving.

It is the owner's responsibility to make sure the specified maintenance, including general maintenance services, is performed. Note that both the new vehicle and emission control system warranties specify that proper maintenance and care must be performed. See "Owner's Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet" for complete warranty information.

General maintenance

General maintenance items are those day-to-day care practices that are important to your vehicle for proper operation. It is the owner's responsibility to ensure that the general maintenance items are performed regularly.

These checks or inspections can be done either by yourself or your Lexus dealer.

Scheduled maintenance

The scheduled maintenance items listed in the "Owner's Manual Supplement / Maintenance Schedule" are those required to be serviced at regular intervals.

For details of your maintenance schedule, read the "Owner's Manual Supplement / Maintenance Schedule".

It is recommended that only genuine Lexus parts be used for maintenance.

The owner may elect to use non-Lexus supplied parts for replacement purposes without invalidating the emission control system warranty. However, use of replacement parts which are not of equivalent quality may impair the effectiveness of the emission control systems.

You may also elect to have maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and system performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual without invalidating this warranty. See "Owner's Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet" for complete warranty information.

Where to go for service?

Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information through technical bulletins, service tips, and in-dealership training programs. They are well informed about the operation of all the systems on your vehicle.

You can be confident that your Lexus dealer's service department performs the best job to meet the maintenance requirements of your vehicle.

Your copy of the repair order is proof that all required maintenance has been performed for warranty coverage. And if any problems should arise with your vehicle while under warranty, your Lexus dealer will promptly take care of it. Again, be sure to keep a copy of the repair order for any service performed on your Lexus.

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many of the maintenance items are easy to do yourself, if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools. Simple instructions for how to perform them are presented in Section 6.

If you are a skilled do-it-yourself mechanic, the Lexus service manuals are recommended. Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance can affect your warranty coverage. See "Owner's Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet" for the details.

GENERAL MAINTENANCE

Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified. It is recommended that any problem you notice be brought to the attention of your Lexus dealer or qualified service shop for their advice.



CAUTION

Make these checks only where adequate ventilation can be obtained if you run the engine.

Vehicle exterior

Items listed below should be performed from time to time, unless otherwise specified.

Tire pressure

Check the pressure with a gauge every two weeks, or at least once a month and adjust as shown on the tire pressure label. See page 271 for additional information.

Tire surface

Check the tires carefully for cuts, damage or excessive wear. See page 272 for additional information.

Wheel nuts

When checking the tires, make sure to check the nuts for looseness. Tighten them if necessary.

MAINTENANCE

Tire rotation

Rotate the tires according to the maintenance schedule. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Maintenance Schedule".) See page 272 for additional information.

Fluid leaks

Check underneath for leaking fuel, oil, water or other fluid after the vehicle has been parked for a while. If you smell fuel fumes or notice any leak, have the cause found and corrected immediately.

Doors and engine hood

Check that all doors, including trunk lid, operate smoothly and all latches lock securely. Make sure the engine hood secondary latch secures the hood when the primary latch is released.

Vehicle interior

Items listed below should be checked regularly, e.g. while performing periodic services, cleaning the vehicle, etc.

Lights

Make sure the headlight, stop lights, tail lights, turn signal lights, and other lights are working. Check headlight aim.

Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers

Check that all service reminder indicators and warning buzzers function properly.

Steering wheel

Check that it has the specified free play. Be alert for changes in steering condition, such as hard steering, excessive free play or strange noise.

Seats

Check that all front seat controls such as seat adjusters, seatback recliner, etc. operate smoothly. Check that the head restraints move up and down smoothly and that the locks hold securely in any latched position.

Seat belts

Check that the seat belt system such as buckles, retractors and anchors operate properly and smoothly. Make sure the belt webbing is not cut, frayed, worn or damaged.

Accelerator pedal

Check the pedal for smooth operation and uneven pedal effort or catching.

Brake pedal

Check the pedal for smooth operation and the proper clearance and free play. Check the brake booster function.

Brakes

At a safe place, check that the brakes do not pull to one side when applied.

Parking brake

Check that the lever has the proper travel and that, on a safe incline, your vehicle is held securely with only the parking brake applied.

Automatic transmission "Park" mechanism

On a safe incline, check that your vehicle is held securely with the selector lever in "P" position and all brakes released.

Engine compartment

Items listed below should be checked from time to time, e.g. each time when refueling.

Washer fluid

Make sure there is sufficient fluid in the tank. See page 290 for additional information.

Engine coolant level

Make sure the coolant level is between the Upper and Lower lines on the see-through reservoir when the engine is cold. See page 255 for additional information.

Battery

Your Lexus has a maintenance free battery. You do not have to add distilled water. For longer life of the battery, however, see page 284 for additional information.

Brake fluid level

Make sure the brake fluid level is correct. See page 267 for additional information.

Engine oil level

Check the level on the dipstick with the engine turned off and the vehicle parked on a level spot. See page 253 for additional information.

MAINTENANCE

Power steering fluid level

GS430: Check the level through the reservoir. The level should be in the "HOT" or "COLD" range depending on the fluid temperature. See page 268 for additional information.

GS300: Check the level on the dipstick. The level should be in the "HOT" or "COLD" range depending on the fluid temperature. See page 269 for additional information.

Exhaust system

If you notice any change in the sound of the exhaust or smell exhaust fumes, have the cause located and corrected immediately. (See engine exhaust cautions in Section 3–1.)

DOES YOUR VEHICLE NEED REPAIRING?

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine missing, stumbling, or ping
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (however, water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driving straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches floors, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. It probably needs adjustment or repair.



CAUTION

Do not continue driving with the vehicle unchecked. It could result in serious vehicle damage and possibly personal injury.

SECTION 7

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS FOR U.S. OWNERS

[Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners](#) 306

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS FOR U.S. OWNERS

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-25-LEXUS).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-800-424-9393 (or 366-0123 in Washington, D.C. area) or write to: NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, D.C. 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the Hotline.

SECTION *1* - 1

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Keys and doors

Keys	8
Engine immobiliser system	11
Wireless remote control	13
Doors	19

KEYS AND DOORS

KEYS



- 1 Master key (black) – The master key works in every lock. For your Lexus dealer to make you a new key with built-in transponder chip, your dealer will need it.**
- 2 Sub key (gray) – The sub key will not open the trunk, trunk main switch and the glove box. For your Lexus dealer to make you a new key with built-in transponder chip, your dealer will need it.**
- 3 Key number plate – Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.**

A transponder chip for engine immobiliser system has been filled in the head of the master and sub keys. These chips are needed to enable the system to function correctly, so be careful not to lose these keys. If you make your own duplicate key, you will not be able to cancel the system or start the engine.

To protect things locked in the trunk or glove box when you have your vehicle parked, leave the sub key with the attendant.

Since the doors and trunk lid can be locked without a key, you should always carry a spare master key in case you accidentally lock your keys inside the vehicle.

If you should lose your keys or if you need additional keys, duplicates can be made by a Lexus dealer using the key number.

We recommend you to write down the key number and keep it in safe place.

Flat key



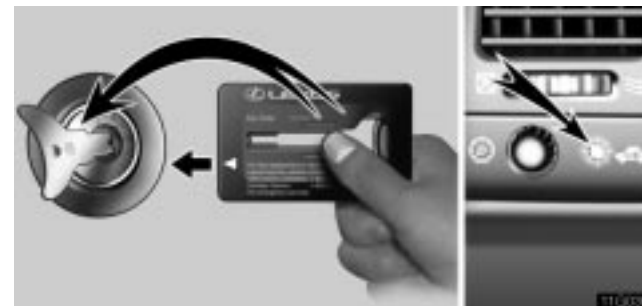
As a transponder chip is built in its key case, you can start the engine with this key.

The flat key works in every lock.

A transponder chip for engine immobiliser system has been filled in the key case of the flat key. This chip is needed to enable the system to function correctly, so be careful not to lose this key. If you make your own duplicate key, you will not be able to cancel the system or start the engine.

Insert your key plate in its key case as shown. We recommend that you always carry this with you for emergency use. Do not leave it in your vehicle.

Starting the engine using a flat key



1. Remove the key plate from the key case.
2. Insert the key plate into the ignition switch. The indicator light keeps flashing.
3. Bring the key case closer to the ignition switch within 10 seconds as indicated by the arrow head. The indicator light goes out. This means the engine immobiliser system is automatically canceled. (For details, see "Engine immobiliser system" on page 11.) You can put the key case away then. You cannot cancel the engine immobiliser system if 10 seconds have past after you inserted the key plate. You need to remove the key plate from the ignition switch and try it again from the step 2.
4. Start the engine within 60 seconds after the security indicator light goes out. You cannot start the engine if 60 seconds have past after the security indicator went off. You need to remove the key plate from the ignition switch and try it again from the step 2.

KEYS AND DOORS

NOTICE

- *Do not let the key case become bent as the key plate may fall out or become bent also.*
- *The flat key is designed for emergency use only. So do not use it regularly instead of other master keys.*



When using a key containing a transponder chip, observe the following precautions:

- *When starting the engine, do not use the key with a key ring resting on the key grip and do not press the key ring against the key grip. Otherwise the engine may not start, or may stop soon after it starts.*



- *When starting the engine, do not use the key with other transponder keys around (including the flat key and keys of other vehicles) and do not press other key plates against the key grip. Otherwise the engine may not start, or may stop soon after it starts. If this happens, remove the key once and then insert it again after taking off other transponder keys (including the flat key and keys of other vehicles) from the ring or while gripping or covering them with your hand to start the engine.*



- ***Do not bend the key grip or flat key.***
- ***Do not cover the key grip or flat key with any material that cuts off electromagnetic waves.***
- ***Do not knock the key or flat key hard against other objects.***
- ***Do not leave the key or flat key exposed to high temperatures for a long period, such as on the dashboard and hood under the direct sunlight.***
- ***Do not put the key or flat key in water or wash it in an ultrasonic washer.***
- ***Do not use the key or flat key with electromagnetic materials.***

ENGINE IMMOBILISER SYSTEM



The engine immobiliser system is a theft prevention system. When you insert the key in the ignition switch, the transponder chip in the key's head transmits an electronic code to the vehicle. The engine will start, only when the electronic code in the chip corresponds to the registered ID code for the vehicle.

The system is automatically set when the key is removed from the ignition switch. At this time, the security indicator light flashes. When you insert the key in the ignition switch, the security indicator light goes out and the system is canceled automatically, which enables the engine to start.

The transponder chip of the flat key is in its key case. You can cancel the engine immobiliser system using the flat key. (For details, see "Flat key" on page 9.)

KEYS AND DOORS

For your Lexus dealer to make you a new key with built-in transponder chip, your dealer will need your key number and master key or the flat key. However, there is a limit to the number of additional keys your Lexus dealer can make for you.

If you make your own duplicate key, you will not be able to cancel the system or start the engine.

For vehicles sold in U.S.A.

**FCC ID: MOZ RI-4ATY
MADE IN JAPAN**

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

For vehicles sold in Canada

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROL*



- 1 Locking the doors and sounding an alarm**
- 2 Unlocking the doors**
- 3 Indicator light**
- 4 Unlocking the trunk lid**

*NOTE: *This feature can be set inoperative as vehicle theft deterrent measure in case of the loss of the wireless remote control key. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

When you operate any button on the key, push it slowly and surely. At this time, the indicator light on the key grip flashes once.

The operational range of the wireless remote control is approximately 1 meter (3 ft.). The effective range may vary with different conditions. To activate the wireless remote control without fail, do it approximately 1 meter (3 ft.) from your Lexus.

In the following cases, the battery in the key may be discharged. If this is a case, replace it using a special screwdriver.

- The remote control does not work.
- The operational range of wireless remote control becomes extremely short.
- The indicator light on the key is dimmed or does not come on.

For the replacement of the battery, see "Replacing the battery" on page 17. You can also have the battery of the key replaced by your Lexus dealer.

If you lose the wireless key, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to avoid the possibility of theft, or an accident.

You can use up to 4 wireless remote control keys for the same vehicle. Contact your Lexus dealer for detailed information.

The wireless remote control key is an electronic component. Observe the following instructions in order not to cause damage to the key.

- Do not leave the wireless remote control key on places where the temperature becomes high such as on the dashboard.
- Do not disassemble it.
- Avoid knocking it hard against other objects or dropping it.
- Avoid putting it in water.

KEYS AND DOORS

Locking/Unlocking the doors

When you push the "LOCK" button on the key briefly, all the doors can be locked from outside the vehicle.

When they are locked securely, the emergency flashers will flash and one beep will sound.* However, when you push the "LOCK" button with any door not closed securely, the buzzer sounds for 10 seconds.** To stop the buzzer, close all the doors securely or push the "UNLOCK" button. If the key is in the ignition switch, locking cannot be done.

Make sure all the doors are locked when you leave the vehicle. Push the "LOCK" button once again. If they were already locked, the turn signal lights will flash.***

*NOTE: *The emergency flashers can be set not to flash and volume of beep sound can be changed. **The buzzer can be set not to sound with any door not closed securely. ***The turn signal lights can be set not to flash. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

NOTICE

Do not push the "LOCK" button any longer than 2 to 3 seconds. Pushing the button longer activates an alarm. For details, see page 15.

When you push the "UNLOCK" button, the driver's door is unlocked. Pushing that button once again within 3 seconds from the first push, all other doors are also unlocked.*

*NOTE: *Unlocking by a 2-time operation can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

At this time, the emergency flashers will flash twice and two beeps will sound.* Together with the activation of unlocking, the interior light comes on for 15 seconds if the interior light switch is in "DOOR" position.** However, this function does not work when the ignition key is in the "ON" position. For further information, see "Interior lights" on page 53.

You have 30 seconds to open a door after using the wireless remote unlock feature.*** If a door is not opened by then, all the doors will be automatically locked again.

Even if the "LOCK" or "UNLOCK" switch is kept pressed in, the locking or unlocking operation is not repeated. Release the button and then push again.

*NOTE: *The emergency flashers can be set not to flash and volume of beep sound can be changed. **The interior light can be set not to come on or the duration of lighting can be changed. ***The time before automatic re-locking can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

Unlocking the trunk lid

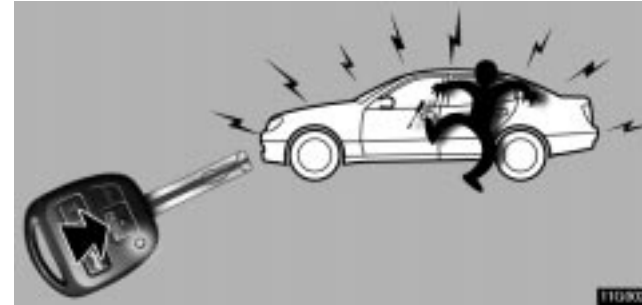


When you keep the button pushed for about 1 second, you can unlock the trunk lid.* One beep sounds.

This function does not work when the ignition key is in the "ON" position.

*NOTE: *The operation method can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

Sounding an alarm*



When you push the "PANIC" button for about 2 to 3 seconds, an alarm sounds to deter any person trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

If you want to stop the alarm, push any button.

This function does not work when the ignition key is in the "ON" position.

*NOTE: *The alarm can be set not to sound. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

KEYS AND DOORS

Operating the windows and moon roof

The windows and moon roof can be operated using a wireless key from outside the vehicle.*

*NOTE: *The windows can be set inoperative. The moon roof can be set to slide open, tilt up or inoperative. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*



Push the "UNLOCK" button until the windows and moon roof start to move. When you release the button, the windows and moon roof stop operating.

For vehicles sold in U.S.A.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTICE:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio / TV technician for help.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Replacing the battery

When you replace the battery, prepare a lithium battery CR1616 and a special screwdriver.



CAUTION

Special care should be taken that small children do not swallow the removed battery or components.

NOTICE

When replacing the battery, be careful not to lose the components, screws and O-ring.



1. Remove the screw, and then the cover while pushing it in the arrow direction.

KEYS AND DOORS



2. Remove the module from the key frame.



3. Remove the 2 screws to take out the lid of the module.

4. Take out the discharged battery and put a new battery with the positive side up.

NOTICE

- *Make sure the positive side and negative side of the battery should be faced correctly.*
- *Be careful not to bend the electrode of the battery insertion and that dust or oils do not adhere to the inside of the module.*
- *Take care not to lose the screws and O-ring.*

5. Install the lid with the 2 screws.

NOTICE

Take care not to damage or bend the O-ring when installing.

6. Install the module into the key frame and secure the cover with the screw.

7. When pushing any switch on the wireless key, make sure the indicator light comes on.

DOORS

Locking with key



► **1 Lock 2 Unlock**

Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle to lock and towards the back to unlock.

The doors lock and unlock simultaneously with either front door. In the driver's door lock, turning the key once will unlock the driver's door and twice in succession will unlock all doors simultaneously.* In the passenger's door lock, turning the key once will unlock all doors simultaneously.

*NOTE: *Unlocking by a 2-time operation can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

The windows and moon roof can be opened and closed from outside the vehicle using the key. For details, see "Power window switches" on page 32 and "Moon roof" on page 70.

Locking with inside lock button



► **1 Lock 2 Unlock**

Push in the lock button to lock and unlock the door.

When locked, the door cannot be opened with either the outside or inside door handle. However, the driver's door can be opened from the inside even with the lock button pushed in.

Closing the door with the lock button pushed in will also lock the door. Be careful not to lock your keys in the vehicle. The door will not lock if the key is left in the ignition switch when closing the front doors.

If the vehicle is subjected to a severe frontal, rear or side impact with the ignition switch turned to the "ON" position, all the doors will unlock automatically after a few seconds.

KEYS AND DOORS



CAUTION

Before driving, make sure the doors are closed and locked, especially when small children are in the vehicle. Along with the proper use of seat belts, locking the doors helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out from the vehicle during an accident. It also helps prevent the doors from being opened unintentionally.

Locking with power door lock switch



► **1** Lock **2** Unlock

To lock all the doors simultaneously, push the power door lock switch on the front side. Pushing on the rear side will unlock them.

The same switch is also equipped on the front passenger's side.

Auto door locking function*: All the doors will lock automatically when the selector lever is moved out of "P" position. This auto door locking function is operable while the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.

*NOTE: * This auto door locking function can be disabled or changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

Locking with rear door child-protector



► **1** *Unlock* **2** *Lock*

Whenever small children are in the vehicle, lock the rear door so that it does not open from the inside. To do this, turn the knob to the "LOCK" position as shown and then close the door.

SECTION 1 - 2

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Switches

Headlight switch	24
Headlight dimmer and turn signal switch	26
Fog light switch	27
Windshield wiper and washer switch	28
Headlight cleaner switch	30
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger switch	31
Power window switches	32
Emergency flasher switch	35
Seat heater switches	35

SWITCHES

HEADLIGHT SWITCH



To turn the lights on, twist the knob on the end of the lever.

FIRST CLICKSTOP: Only the parking, tail, license plate, side marker and instrument panel lights turn on.

SECOND CLICKSTOP: Headlights also turn on.

THIRD CLICKSTOP ("AUTO"): The headlights and all other lights automatically turn on depending on the darkness of the surroundings.*

Vehicles sold in U.S.A.: When the headlights are on, the headlight indicator lights up in the instrument cluster.

Vehicles sold in Canada: When the tail lights are on, the tail light indicator lights up in the instrument cluster.

Manually twist the knob to the second clickstop to turn on the headlights if they are needed immediately when entering a dark tunnel, parking structure, etc.

When the headlight switch is turned to the first or second clickstop, the brightness of the instrument cluster will be reduced slightly unless the instrument panel light control knob is turned fully on.

*NOTE: *The operating condition or sensitivity can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

SWITCHES



The automatic light control sensor is on top of the driver's side instrument panel.

Do not place anything on the instrument panel, and/or do not affix anything on the windshield to block this sensor.

When the headlights come on, the lights automatically turn off about 30 seconds after any of the doors is opened and closed with the ignition key turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position.* To turn them on again, turn the ignition key to the "ON" position, or turn the headlight switch off and then twist the knob until the first or second clickstop. If you are going to park for over one week, make sure the headlight switch is off.

When the headlight switch is on with all the doors locked, pushing the "LOCK" button on the wireless remote control key turns off the headlights.

*NOTE: *The time before turning off the lights can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

Daytime Running Light System

The headlights turn on at reduced intensity when the parking brake is released with the engine started, even with the light switch in the "OFF" position. They will not go off until the ignition switch is turned off.

To turn on the other exterior lights and instrument panel lights, twist the knob to the first clickstop.

Twist the knob to the second clickstop to turn on the headlights to full intensity for driving at night.

When setting the knob to the third clickstop ("AUTO"), the headlights will automatically adjust to full intensity and/or turn on the other lights depending on the darkness of the surroundings. Likewise, as the surroundings become brighter, the headlights will turn to reduced intensity, ultimately turning off the other lights.

NOTICE

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

SWITCHES

Automatic headlight leveling system (Vehicles with discharge headlight only)



As the headlight beam level is always maintained automatically at the proper level in all loading conditions, your headlights do not dazzle other road users.

If this system fails, the warning light in the instrument cluster comes on. If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by Lexus dealer.

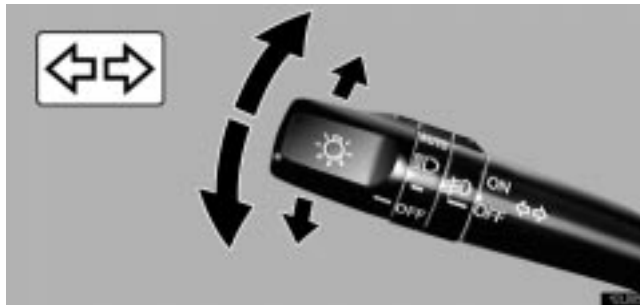
HEADLIGHT DIMMER AND TURN SIGNAL SWITCH



For high beam, push the lever forward. Pull it back for low beam. For the headlight flasher, pull it further back.

A blue light in the instrument cluster indicates high beam or headlight flasher is on.

The headlight flasher works even when the headlight switch is off.



For signaling turns, move the lever up or down in the conventional manner.

The ignition key must be in the "ON" position.

The turn signal is self-cancelling after a turn, but after a lane change, you may have to cancel it by hand. You can also signal a lane change by moving the turn signal lever partway and holding it there.

If the green light in the instrument cluster flashes faster than normal, it indicates that the front or rear turn signal bulb has burned out. If this indicator light does not come on, the fuse or the indicator light itself has probably failed.

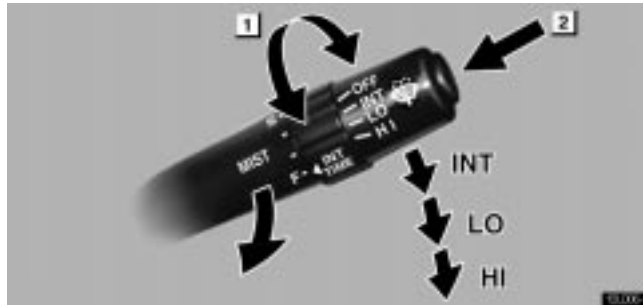
FOG LIGHT SWITCH



To turn on the fog lights, turn the switch to the "ON" position. The fog lights come on only when the headlights are on low beam.

SWITCHES

WINDSHIELD WIPER AND WASHER SWITCH



► **1** Interval adjuster **2** Washer on

To turn the wipers on, move the lever down until you reach the desired speed setting.

The ignition key must be in the "ON" position.

There are 3 settings:

"INT" position: Intermittent operation

"LO" position: Low speed operation

"HI" position: High speed operation

Twist the interval adjuster upward to increase the wiping time interval between sweeps, and downward to decrease it.

The wiper lever must be in the "INT" position.

For mist wiper operation (a single wipe), pull the lever toward you and release it.

To make the washer squirt, push the button on the end of the lever.

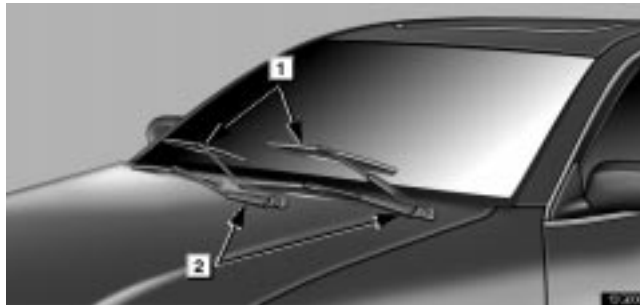
The low washer fluid warning light in the instrument cluster comes on when the fluid level in the tank becomes nearly empty. For information on adding washer fluid, see "Adding washer fluid" on page 290.

In cold weather, warm the windshield with the defroster before using the washer. This will help prevent icing, which could block your vision.

NOTICE

Do not operate the wipers if the windshield is dry. It may scratch the glass.

Shifting the windshield wiper position



► **1 Rest position** **2 Retracted position**

The wiper blades retract under the hood when the wipers are turned off. If retraction is obstructed by snow, etc., at the bottom of the windshield, the wipers should be shifted from the retracted position to the rest position above the hood level. When the snow season is over, manually return the wipers to the retracted position following the procedure given below.



★ *More than 10 cm (3.9 in.)*

To shift the windshield wipers from retracted to rest position, hold the connection of the wiper arm and wiper blade and pull it upward along the windshield glass with the force of about 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf.).

NOTICE

To prevent the wiper blades from being deformed, be sure to hold the connection of the wiper arm and wiper blade securely.

SWITCHES



To return the windshield wipers to retracted position, push the connection of the wiper arm and wiper blade downward.

NOTICE

To prevent the wiper blades from being deformed, be sure to hold the connection of the wiper arm and wiper blade securely.

HEADLIGHT CLEANER SWITCH (CANADA ONLY)



To spray fluid on the headlights, push the switch with the headlights on.

The ignition key must be in the "ON" position.

The low washer fluid warning light in the instrument cluster comes on when the fluid level in the tank becomes nearly empty. For information on adding washer fluid, see "Adding washer fluid" on page 290.

NOTICE

Do not turn the headlight cleaner on with the tank empty. It may cause the cleaner motor to overheat.

REAR WINDOW AND OUTSIDE REAR VIEW MIRROR DEFOGGER SWITCH



To turn the electric rear window defogger on, push the switch.

The ignition key must be in the "ON" position.

The thin heater wires on the inside of the rear window and the heater panels in the outside rear view mirrors will quickly clear the surface. Keep your hands off the mirror faces when the switch is on. An indicator light is on when the defogger is operating.

The system will automatically shut off when the defogger has operated about 15 minutes.

CAUTION

Since the mirror surfaces can get hot, keep your hands off them when the switch is on.

If further defrosting or defogging is desired, simply actuate the switch again. When the surface has cleared, push the switch once again to turn the defogger off. Continuous use may cause the battery to discharge, especially during stop-and-go driving. The defogger is not designed to dry rain water or to melt snow.

If the outside rear view mirrors are heavily coated with ice, use a spray de-icer before operating the switch.

NOTICE

- *When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or connectors.*
- *To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not operate the defogger continuously longer than necessary.*

SWITCHES

POWER WINDOW SWITCHES

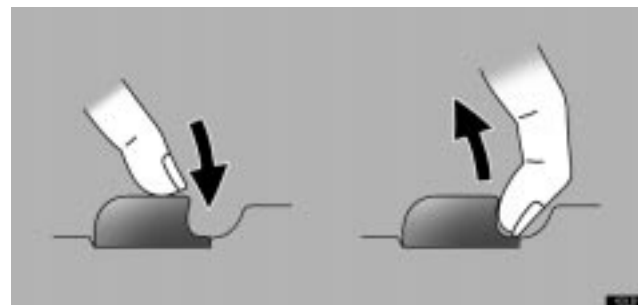


- **1** *For driver's window*
- 2** *For front passenger's window*
- 3** *For left rear window*
- 4** *For right rear window*

To raise or lower the windows, use the switch on each door. The passengers' windows can also be controlled by the switches on the driver's door.

The power windows work when the ignition key is in the "ON" position.

Key off operation: Even if the ignition key is turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position, the window can be operated until any of the doors is opened (or for about 45 seconds).



Operating the switches

To raise or lower the window, pull the switch halfway up or push it halfway down.

Automatic operation: To fully raise or lower the window automatically, pull the switch fully up or push it fully down.

To stop the window partway, lightly push or pull the switch in the opposite direction and then release it.

Operating the window lock switch



► Indicator light

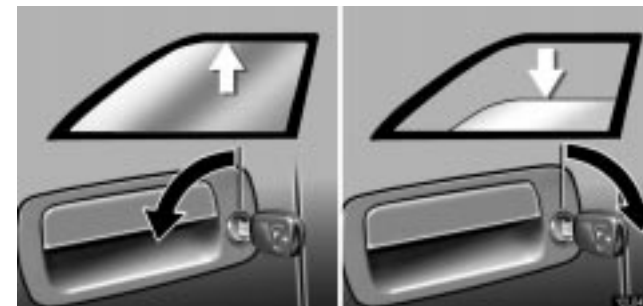
With the window lock switch pressed in, only the driver's window can be raised or lowered.

The indicator lights on the switch tell you which of the switches can be operated.

Operating the windows from outside the vehicle

The windows can be operated using an ignition key.*

*NOTE: *This feature can be set inoperative. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*



Insert the ignition key into the key hole on the driver's side.

To close the windows: Turn the key in the locking direction and hold it.

After the door is locked, the window begins to close. To stop in the middle, return the key.

To open the windows: Turn the key in the unlocking direction and hold it.

After the door is unlocked, the window begins to open. To stop in the middle, return the key.

SWITCHES

Jam protection function

During automatic raising operation, key off raising operation or raising operation using the ignition key from the outside, the window stops and is lowered if something gets caught between the window and window frame.

If the window receives a strong impact, this function may work even if nothing is caught.

- Never try jamming any part of your body to make the jam protection function work intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closed.



CAUTION

To avoid serious personal injury, you must do the following.

- Always make sure the heads, hands and other parts of the bodies of all occupants are kept completely inside the vehicle before you close the power windows. If someone's neck, head or hands gets caught in a closing window, it could result in a serious injury. When anyone closes the power windows, make sure that he/she operates the windows safely.
- When small children are in the vehicle, never let them use the power window switches without supervision. Use the window lock switch to prevent them from making unexpected use of the switches.
- Never leave small children alone in the vehicle, especially with the ignition key still inserted. They could use the power window switches and get trapped in a window. Unattended children can be involved in serious accidents.

EMERGENCY FLASHER SWITCH



To turn on the emergency flashers, push the switch.

All the turn signal lights will flash. The emergency flashers will work with the engine running or off and with or without the ignition key.

Turn on the emergency flashers to warn other drivers if you must stop your vehicle where it might be a traffic hazard.

Always pull your vehicle as far off the road as possible.

The turn signal light switch will not work when the emergency flashers are in operation.

NOTICE

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the switch on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

SEAT HEATER SWITCHES



► **1** For driver's seat **2** For front passenger's seat

There is a heater switch for each front seat. Push the front of the switch to turn the heater on and push the rear side to turn it off.

The ignition key must be in the "ON" position.

SWITCHES



CAUTION

Occupants must use caution when operating the seat heater because they may experience minor burns even at low temperatures. Use extra caution for;

- Babies, small children, elderly persons, sick persons or handicapped persons
- Persons who have delicate skin
- Persons who are exhausted
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs which induce sleep (sleeping drug, cold remedy, etc.).

To prevent the seat from overheating, do not use the seat heater with a blanket, cushion, or other insulating objects which cover the seat.

NOTICE

- *Do not put unevenly weighted objects on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.*
- *When cleaning the seats, do not use organic substances (paint thinner, benzine, alcohol, gasoline, etc.). They may damage the heater and seat surface.*
- *To prevent the battery from being discharged, turn the switches on when the engine is running.*

SECTION 1 - 3

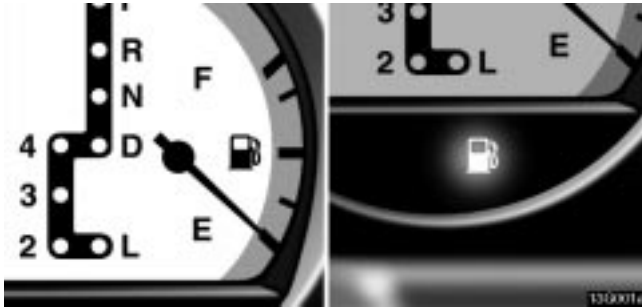
INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Gauges, meters and service reminder indicators

Fuel gauge	38
Engine coolant temperature gauge	39
Tachometer	40
Odometer and trip meter	40
Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers	41
Instrument panel light control	50

GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

FUEL GAUGE



The gauge is displayed when the ignition switch is on and indicates the approximate quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.

It is a good idea to keep the tank over 1/4 full.

If the fuel level approaches "E" or the low fuel level warning light comes on, fill the fuel tank as soon as possible.

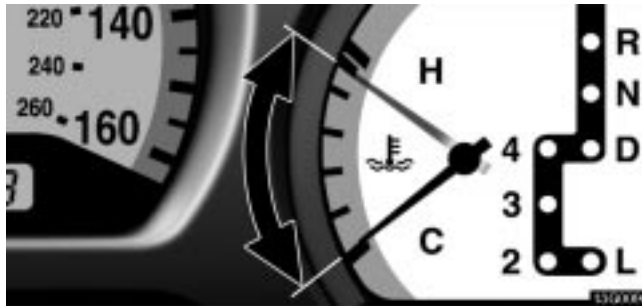
On inclines or curves, due to the movement of fuel in the tank, the fuel gauge needle may fluctuate or the low fuel level warning light may come on earlier than usual.

If the fuel tank is completely empty, the malfunction indicator lamp comes on. Fill the fuel tank immediately.

The indicator lamp goes off after driving several times. If the indicator lamp does not go off, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

See the inner back cover for fuel capacity and recommended fuel selection.

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE



► Normal range

The gauge indicates the engine coolant temperature when the ignition switch is on. The engine operating temperature will vary with changes in weather and engine load.

If the needle points to the red zone or higher, stop your vehicle and allow the engine to cool.

Your vehicle may overheat during severe operating conditions, such as:

- Driving up a long hill on a hot day.
- Reducing speed or stopping after high speed driving.
- Idling for a long period with the air conditioning on in stop-and-go traffic.

NOTICE

- *Do not remove the thermostat in the engine cooling system as this may cause the engine to overheat. The thermostat is designed to control the flow of coolant to keep the temperature of the engine within the specified operating range.*
- *Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. See "If your vehicle overheats" on page 213.*

GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

TACHOMETER



The tachometer indicates engine speed in thousands of rpm (revolutions per minute). Use it while driving to prevent engine over-revving.

Driving with the engine running too fast causes excessive engine wear and poor fuel economy. Remember, in most cases the slower the engine speed, the greater the fuel economy.

NOTICE

Do not let the indicator needle get into the red zone. This may cause severe engine damage.

ODOMETER AND TRIP METER



This meter displays the odometer and two trip meters. To change the mode indication, push the "ODO/TRIP" button.

The odometer records the total distance the vehicle has been driven. The twin trip meter records two different distances independently.

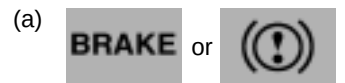
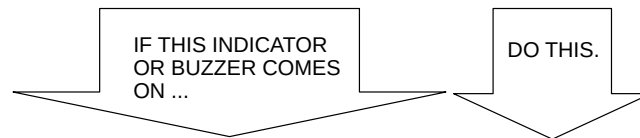
For example, you can use one meter to calculate the fuel economy and the other to measure the distance on each trip.

To change the trip meter indication from one trip to the other, push the "ODO/TRIP" button. To set the A trip meter to zero, display the A meter reading, then push the "RESET" button. The same applies for the B trip meter.

The data of trip meters will be cancelled if the electrical power source is disconnected.

GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS AND WARNING BUZZERS



(Indicator and buzzer)

If parking brake is off, stop immediately and contact Lexus dealer.



(Indicator and buzzer)

Fasten driver's seat belt.



Fasten front passenger's seat belt.



Take vehicle to Lexus dealer immediately.



Stop and check.



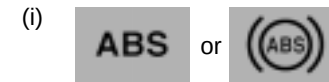
Stop and check.



Add engine oil.



Take vehicle to Lexus dealer.



Take vehicle to Lexus dealer.
If brake system warning light is also on, stop immediately and contact Lexus dealer.



Close all doors.



Replace bulb.

GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

(l)		Add washer fluid.
(m)		Fill up tank.
(n)		Take vehicle to Lexus dealer.
(o)		Take vehicle to Lexus dealer.
(p)	Key reminder buzzer	Remove key.

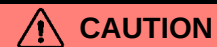
(a) Brake System Warning Light and Buzzer

This light comes on in the following cases when the ignition key is in the "ON" position.

- **When the parking brake is applied ...**

This light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position even after the parking brake is released.

- **When the brake fluid level is low ...**



It is dangerous to continue driving normally when the brake fluid level is low.

- **When the hydraulic brake booster fails ...**

If the hydraulic booster causes a problem resulting in poor braking performance, the warning light comes on and buzzer sounds continuously.

Have your vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer in the following cases:

- The light does not come on even if the parking brake is applied when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position.
- The light does not come on even if the ignition key is turned on with the parking brake released.

A warning light turned on briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.

 CAUTION

If either of the following conditions occurs, immediately stop your vehicle at a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

- The light does not turn off even after the parking brake is released while the engine is running.
- The warning buzzer comes on together with the warning light.

In either case, this can indicate that the brakes may not work properly and your stopping distance will become longer. Depress the brake pedal firmly and bring the vehicle to an immediate stop.

Any of the following conditions may occur, but do not indicate the malfunction:

- The light may stay on for about 60 seconds after the engine is started. It is normal if it turns off after a while.
- Depressing the brake pedal repeatedly may turn on the warning light and buzzer. It is normal if the light turns off and the buzzer stops sounding after a few seconds.
- You may hear a small sound in the engine compartment after the engine is started or the brake pedal is depressed repeatedly. This is a pump pulsating sound of the brake system, and it is not a malfunction.

(b) Driver's Seat Belt Reminder Light and Buzzer

This light and buzzer remind you to buckle up the driver's seat belt.

Once the ignition key is turned to "ON" or "START", the reminder light flashes and buzzer sounds if the driver's seat belt is not fastened. Unless the driver fastens the belt, the light stays flashing and the buzzer stops after about 4 to 8 seconds.

(c) Front Passenger's Seat Belt Reminder Light

This light reminds you to buckle up the front passenger's seat belt.

Once the ignition key is turned to "ON" or "START", the reminder light flashes if a passenger sits in the front passenger seat and does not fasten the seat belt. Unless the front passenger fastens the belt, the light stays flashing.

If luggage load is placed on the front passenger seat, depending on its weight and how it is placed on the seat, built-in sensors in the seat cushion may detect the pressure, causing the reminder light to come on.

GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

(d) SRS Warning Light

The indicator comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. It goes off after about 6 seconds. This means the SRS airbags and seat belt pretensioners are operating properly.

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side airbag sensors, curtain shield airbag sensors, front seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, warning light, interconnecting wiring and power sources.

If either of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction somewhere in the parts monitored by the warning light system. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.

- When the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, the light does not come on, remains on or flashes.
- The light comes on or starts flashing while driving.

If the light stays on, it indicates that the driver and front passenger airbags fail. If the light flashes, the side and curtain shield airbags and/or seat belt pretensioners fail.

(e) Discharge Warning Light

This light warns that the battery is being discharged.

If it comes on while you are driving, stop the vehicle, turn off the engine, and check for the cause. Look first at the engine drive belt.

- If it is loose or broken, the generator will not charge the battery properly.
- If the belt is O.K., there is a problem somewhere in the charging system.

The engine ignition will continue to operate, however, until the battery is discharged. Turn off the air conditioning, blower, radio, etc., and drive directly to the nearest Lexus dealer or repair shop.

NOTICE

Do not continue driving if the engine drive belt is broken or loose.

GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

(f) Low Oil Pressure Warning Light

This light warns that the engine oil pressure is too low.

If it flickers or stays on while you are driving, pull off the road to a safe place and stop the engine immediately. Call a Lexus dealer or qualified repair shop for assistance.

The light may occasionally flicker when the engine is idling or it may come on briefly after a hard stop. There is no cause for concern if it then goes out when the engine is accelerated slightly.

The light may come on when the oil level is extremely low. It is not designed to indicate low oil level, and the oil level must be checked using the oil level dipstick.

NOTICE

Do not drive the vehicle with the warning light on – even for one block. It may ruin the engine.

(g) Low Engine Oil Level Warning Light

This light warns that the engine oil level is too low. Add oil as soon as possible. (For instructions, see "Checking the engine oil level" on page 253.)

While driving on steep inclines or rough roads which causes the vehicle to substantially sway or on curves, this light may come on due to the movement of engine oil in the engine.

NOTICE

Continued engine operation with low engine oil will damage the engine.

GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

(h) Malfunction Indicator Lamp

This lamp comes on in the following cases.

- a. The fuel tank is completely empty. (See "Fuel gauge" on page 38 for instructions.)
- b. The fuel tank cap is not tightened securely. (See "Fuel tank cap" on page 69 for instructions.)
- c. There is a problem somewhere in your engine electrical system, automatic transmission electrical system or electronic throttle control system.

If it comes on while you are driving in case "c", have your vehicle checked/repared by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

If this lamp comes on and the engine speed does not increase with the accelerator pedal depressed down to about the middle position, there may be a problem somewhere in your electronic throttle control system.

At this time, if you depress the accelerator pedal more firmly and slowly, you can drive your vehicle at low speeds. Have your Lexus checked by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Even if the abnormality of the electronic throttle control system is corrected during low speed driving, the system may not be recovered until the engine is stopped and the ignition key is turned to "ACC" or "LOCK" position.

(i) "ABS" Warning Light

The light comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. If the anti-lock brake system and the brake assist system work properly, the light turns off after a few seconds. Thereafter, if either of the systems malfunctions, the light comes on again.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system, the brake assist system, the traction control system and/or the vehicle skid control system do/does not operate, but the brake system still operates conventionally.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system does not operate so that the wheels could lock up during a sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces.

If either of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction somewhere in the parts monitored by the warning light system. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.

- The light does not come on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, or remains on.
- The light comes on while you are driving.

GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

A warning light turning on briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.

Either of the following conditions may occur, but do not indicate the malfunction:

- The light may stay on for about 60 seconds after the engine is started. It is normal if it turns off after a while.
- Depressing the brake pedal repeatedly may turn on the light. It is normal if it turns off after a few seconds.

(j) Open Door Warning Light

This light remains on until all the doors are completely closed.

(k) Rear Light Failure Warning Light

If this light comes on when the headlight switch is turned on (at the first or second clickstop), it indicates that one or more of the tail lights are burned out.

If it comes on when the brake pedal is depressed, one or more stop lights are burned out.

Have defective bulbs replaced as soon as possible.

(l) Low Washer Fluid Warning Light

This light comes on when the fluid level in the tank becomes nearly empty. Fill the tank as soon as possible.

(m) Low Fuel Level Warning Light

This light comes on when the fuel level in the tank becomes nearly empty. Fill the tank as soon as possible.

On inclines or curves, due to the movement of fuel in the tank, the low fuel level warning light may come on earlier than usual.

GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

(n) Automatic Headlight Leveling System Warning Light

This light warns that when there is a problem somewhere in the automatic headlight leveling system.

If it comes on, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

(o) Vehicle Skid Control System Warning Lights

These lights warn that when there is a problem somewhere in the vehicle skid control system, traction control system or brake assist system.

If the "VSC" warning light and "VSC OFF" indicator light come on, have your vehicle checked by Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

The lights will come on when the ignition key is turned to "ON", and will go off after about a few seconds.

The lights may stay on for 60 seconds after the engine is started. It is normal if they go out after a while.

Depressing the brake pedal repeatedly may turn on the lights. It is normal if they go out after a few seconds.

If the "VSC" warning light and "VSC OFF" indicator light come on, the vehicle skid control system does not activate, however, it is no problem to continue your driving.

(p) Key Reminder Buzzer

This buzzer reminds you to remove the key when you open the driver's door with the ignition key in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position.

GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

How to check all the service reminder indicators

(except the low fuel level warning light):

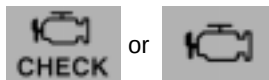
1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Open the door.

The following service reminder indicator should come on. It goes off when you close the door completely.



3. Turn the ignition key to "ON".

The following service reminder indicators should come on.



The following service reminder indicators go off after a few seconds.



The following service reminder indicator goes off after 6 seconds.



The lights other than the slip indicator light may stay on for about 60 seconds after the engine is started. It is normal if they go out after a while.

If any service reminder indicator or warning buzzer does not function as described above, have it checked by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHT CONTROL



The brightness of the instrument panel lights is automatically adjusted depending on the brightness of your surroundings. To adjust the brightness as you like, turn the knob. However, if the brightness is automatically adjusted at the maximum, turning the knob cannot change the brightness.

When the headlight switch is in the first or second click stop, you can also adjust the brightness of the displays on the audio and air conditioning systems using this knob.

SECTION 1 - 4

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Interior equipment

Vanity mirrors	52
Interior lights	53
Personal lights	53
Ignition switch light	54
Clock	54
Cigarette lighter and ashtray	55
Power outlet	56
Rear console box	57
Glove box	57
Garage door opener	58
Cup holders	60
Coin box	61
Tie-down hooks	61
Floor mat	62
First-aid kit holder	63
Luggage stowage precautions	63

INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

VANITY MIRRORS



To use the vanity mirrors, swing the sun visor down and open the cover.

The vanity light comes on when you open the cover.

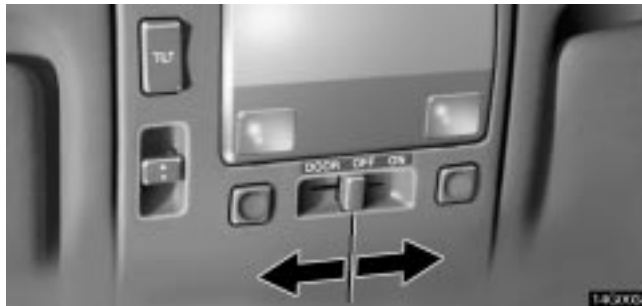
Sun visors



- 1** To block out glare from the front, swing the sun visor down.
- 2** To block out glare from the side, remove the sun visor from the hook and swing it to the side.
- 3** To block out glare coming obliquely from behind you, slide the visor backwards.

At this position, the vanity light does not come on.

INTERIOR LIGHTS



To turn on the interior light, slide the switch.

With the switch in the "DOOR" position, the light comes on when any of the doors are opened. After all the doors are closed, the light remains on for about 15 seconds and then goes out.

However, in the following cases, the light goes out immediately:

1. All the doors are closed when the ignition key is in "ACC" or "ON" position.
2. The ignition key is turned to "ACC" or "ON" when the light is still on.
3. All the doors are locked when the light is still on.
4. One door is closed with the lock button pushed in while the other doors are locked.

PERSONAL LIGHTS

Front



Rear



To turn on the personal light, push the switch. To turn it off, push the switch again.

INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

IGNITION SWITCH LIGHT



For easy access to the ignition switch, the ignition switch light comes on when any of the doors are opened.

The light remains on for about 15 seconds and goes out after all the doors are closed. However, the light goes out immediately when all the doors are locked or the ignition key is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

CLOCK



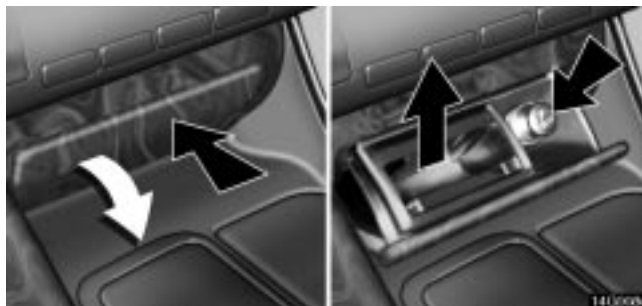
The digital clock indicates the time with the ignition key at the "ACC" or "ON" position. To reset the hour, press the "H" button. To reset the minutes, press the "M" button. To adjust the time to the nearest hour, press the ":00" button.

For example, if the ":00" button is pressed when the time is between 9:30 – 9:59 or between 10:01 – 10:29, the time will change to 10:00.

With the tail lights on, the background brightness of the time indication will be reduced.

If the electrical power source has been disconnected from the clock, the time display will automatically be set to 1:00 (one o'clock).

CIGARETTE LIGHTER AND ASHTRAY



► Front cigarette lighter and ashtray

To use the cigarette lighter and ashtray, first push against the ashtray cover. Then when the ashtray opens out, press in the cigarette lighter. When it becomes heated, it automatically pops out ready for use.

Do not hold the cigarette lighter pressed in.

If the engine is not running, the ignition key must be in the "ACC" position.

When finished with your cigarette, thoroughly extinguish it in the ashtray to prevent other cigarette butts from catching fire. After using the ashtray, push it back in completely.

To remove the ashtray, just pull it up.

Use a Lexus genuine cigarette lighter or equivalent for replacement.



► Rear ashtray

To use the ashtray, pull on the lid.

When finished with your cigarette, thoroughly extinguish it in the ashtray to prevent other cigarette butts from catching fire. After using the ashtray, push it back in or close the lid completely.

To remove the ashtray, just pull it up.

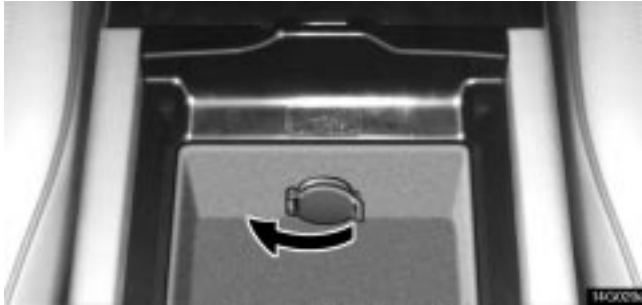


CAUTION

To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or sudden stop while driving, always close the ashtray completely after using.

INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

POWER OUTLET



The power outlet is designed for power supply for car accessories.

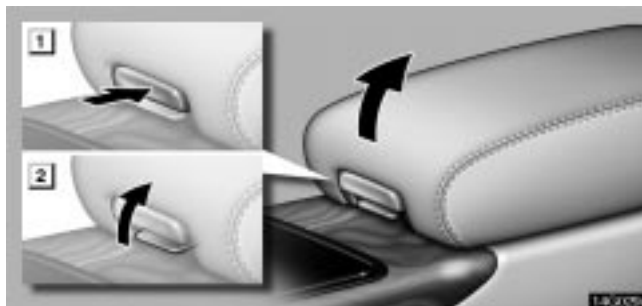
The ignition key must be in the "ACC" or "ON" position for the power outlet to be used.

- *Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use. Inserting a foreign object other than the appropriate plug that fits the outlet, or allowing any liquid into the outlet may cause electrical failure or short circuits.*

NOTICE

- *To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use the electricity over the total vehicle capacity of 12V 3.5A.*
- *To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.*

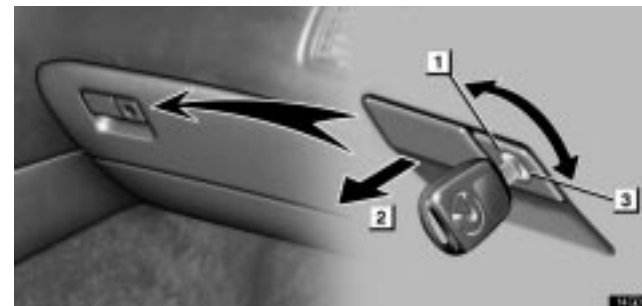
REAR CONSOLE BOX



► **1** For upper box **2** For lower box

To use the rear console box, open as shown in the illustration.

GLOVE BOX



► **1** Unlock **2** Open **3** Lock

To open the glove box door, pull the lever. To lock the glove box door, insert the master key and turn it clockwise.

With the tail lights on, the glove box light will come on when the glove box door is open.



CAUTION

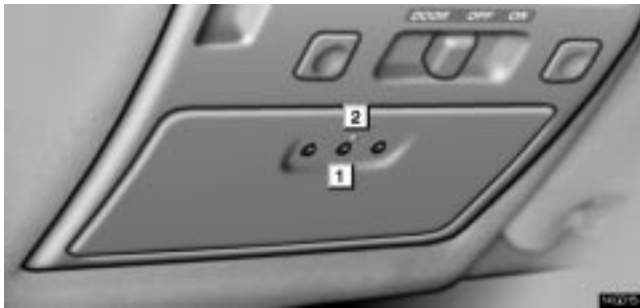
To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed while driving.

INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

GARAGE DOOR OPENER

The garage door opener is manufactured under license from **HomeLink®** and can be programmed to operate garage doors, estate gates, security lighting, etc.

(a) Programming **HomeLink®**



► **1** Buttons **2** Indicator light

The **HomeLink®** has 3 buttons and can be programmed to operate 3 separate devices.

Prepare the **HomeLink®** for programming by erasing all codes or the memorized data programmed by the former owner. Follow the procedure in "(c) Erasing the garage door opener memory".

1. Decide which one of the 3 buttons you want to program. Push and hold down the button for about 20 seconds until the indicator light begins to flash. While holding this button, follow steps "2" and "3".

2. Bring the hand held garage door opener within about 25 mm (1 in.) of the button being programmed and push the button on the hand held garage door opener. The signal from the hand held garage door opener is sent to the vehicle's opener.

3. When the frequency and code is registered, the indicator light flashes rapidly. At this point, you can release both buttons.

4. To program the remaining buttons, repeat steps "1" through "3".

If you want to replace an existing program with a new program, select the button you want to program. Follow the procedure from step 1.

If the transmitter has a "rolling code feature", it is necessary to program the in-garage receiver after programming **HomeLink®**.

1. Locate the "training" or "learning" button on the in-garage receiver and push and release this button. Location of the button may vary by the garage door opener manufacturer.

2. Firmly push and release the trained **HomeLink®** button 2 times (some garage door manufacturer may require you to push the **HomeLink®** button up to 3 times) to complete the process.

The garage door should now operate when the **HomeLink®** button is pushed.

Do not use the **HomeLink®** universal transmitter with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature as required by Federal Safety Standards. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.

 CAUTION

When programming or operating the garage door opener, make sure there is no one around the moving door. It is dangerous if someone is caught.

(b) Operating the garage door opener

Push the appropriate button to activate the garage door opener. The indicator light comes on. The garage door opener continues to send the signal for up to 20 seconds as long as the button is pushed.

(c) Erasing the garage door opener memory

Push and hold down the 2 outside buttons for about 20 seconds until the indicator light flashes. All memorized data will be erased.

FCC ID: CB2V94800
CANADA: 1763 102 264

This device complies with FCC Rules part 15. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may be received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. **WARNING: This transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and DOC/MDC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.**

INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

CUP HOLDERS



► **Front**

To use the cup holder, push the cup holder lid.

You can use it as an accessory box by removing the holder inside.

CAUTION

- Do not place anything else other than cups or drink-cans on the cup holder, as such items may be thrown about in the compartment and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or in an accident.
- To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or sudden stop while driving, keep the cup holder closed when not in use.



► **Rear**

To use the cup holder, push the cup holder portion of the center armrest in the rear seat.

The cup holder is designed for holding cups or drink-cans securely.

CAUTION

- Do not place anything else other than cups or drink-cans on the cup holder, as such items may be thrown about in the compartment and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or in an accident.
- To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or sudden stop while driving, keep the cup holder closed when not in use.

COIN BOX



To use the coin box, push against the coin box cover.

CAUTION

Keep the coin box closed when not in use.

TIE-DOWN HOOKS



To secure your luggage, use the tie-down hooks as shown above.

See "Luggage stowage precautions" on page 63 for precautions in loading luggage.

CAUTION

To avoid personal injury, keep the tie-down hooks stored under the carpet when not in use.

INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

FLOOR MAT



Use a floor mat of the correct size.

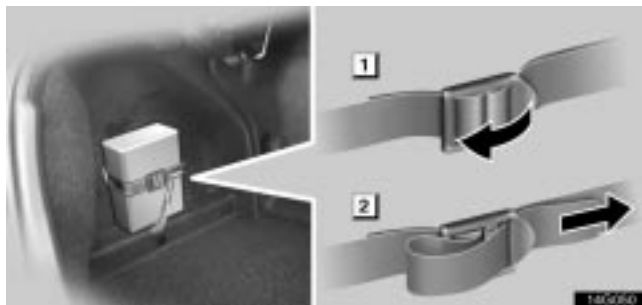
If the floor carpet and floor mat have a hole, then it is designed for use with a locking clip. Fix the floor mat with locking clip into the hole in the floor carpet.



CAUTION

Make sure the floor mat is properly placed on the floor carpet. If the floor mat slips and interferes with the movement of the pedals during driving, it may cause an accident.

FIRST-AID KIT HOLDER



► **1 To loosen** **2 To tighten**

This belt is designed to hold the first-aid kit.

To loosen: Pull the buckle forward.

To tighten: Pull on the belt.

Make sure the first-aid kit is securely held.

LUGGAGE STOWAGE PRECAUTIONS

When stowing luggage or cargo in the vehicle, observe the following:

- Put luggage or cargo in the trunk when at all possible. Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Placing the weight as far forward as possible helps maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.



CAUTION

- Do not place anything on the package tray behind the rear seatback. Such items may be thrown about and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or in an accident.
- Do not drive with objects left on top of the instrument panel. They may interfere with the driver's field of view. Or they may move during sharp vehicle acceleration or turning, and impair the driver's control of the vehicle. In an accident they may injure the vehicle occupants.

NOTICE

Do not load the vehicle beyond the vehicle capacity weight specified on the tire pressure label.

SECTION 1 - 5

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Exterior equipment

Hood	66
Trunk lid	67
Fuel tank cap	69
Moon roof	70

EXTERIOR EQUIPMENT

HOOD



1. To open the hood, pull the hood lock release lever under the instrument panel. The hood will spring up slightly.



2. Insert your fingers under the hood, push up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.

Before closing the hood, check to see that you have not forgotten any tools, rags, etc. Then lower the hood and make sure it locks.

CAUTION

Before driving, be sure that the hood is closed and securely locked. Otherwise, the hood may open unexpectedly while driving and an accident may occur.

TRUNK LID



To unlock the trunk lid, insert the master key and turn it clockwise.

To close the trunk lid, lower it and press down on it. After closing the trunk lid, try pulling it up to make sure it is securely closed.

The trunk lid can be unlocked using the wireless remote control key. For details, see page 15.

CAUTION

- Keep the trunk lid closed while driving. This not only keeps the luggage from being thrown out, but also prevents exhaust gases from entering the vehicle.
- Always lock the trunk lid and all doors, and keep away the vehicle keys out of children's reaches.

- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Un supervised children may lock themselves in the vehicles or trunk and suffer serious injuries or death.

Trunk lid opener



► **1** Main switch **2** Operative **3** Inoperative

To open the trunk lid while sitting in the driver's seat, pull the lever with the main switch not pushed in.

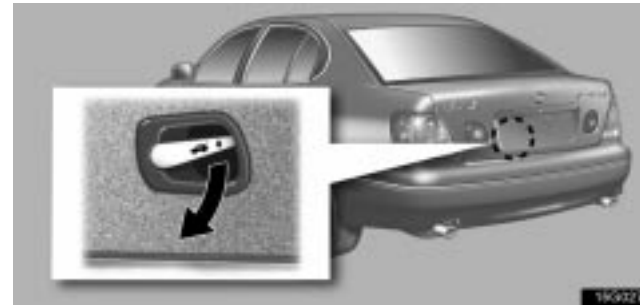
EXTERIOR EQUIPMENT



- 1** If you do not want to activate the trunk lid opener system, push in the main switch.
- 2** To activate the system, insert the master key and turn it counterclockwise.

To protect things put in the trunk, when you have your vehicle parked, push in the main switch.

Internal trunk release handle



If a person is locked in the trunk, pull down the phosphorescent handle (illuminated for a while) on the inside of trunk lid in case of emergency to open the trunk lid.

The handle illuminating time depends on the intensity of the light thrown on the handle.

FUEL TANK CAP

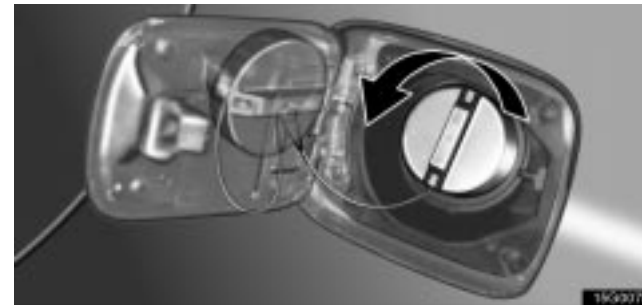


1. To open the fuel filler door, pull the lever under the instrument panel.

When refueling, turn off the engine.

CAUTION

- Do not smoke, cause sparks or allow open flames when refuelling. The fumes are flammable.
- When opening the cap, do not remove the cap quickly. In hot weather, fuel under pressure could cause injury by spraying out of the filler neck if the cap is suddenly removed.



2. To remove the fuel tank cap, turn the cap slowly counterclockwise, then pause slightly before removing it. The removed cap can be stored on the back side of the fuel filler door.

It is not unusual to hear a slight swoosh when the cap is opened. When installing the cap, turn the cap clockwise until you hear a click.

If the cap is not tightened securely, the malfunction indicator lamp comes on. Make sure the cap is tightened securely.

The indicator lamp goes off after driving several times. If the indicator lamp does not go off, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

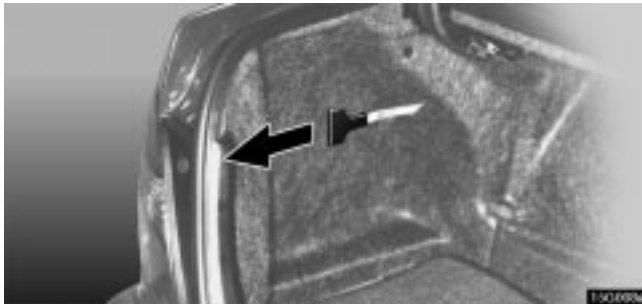
EXTERIOR EQUIPMENT



CAUTION

- Make sure the cap is tightened securely to prevent fuel spillage in case of an accident.
- Use only a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap for replacement. It is designed to regulate fuel tank pressure.

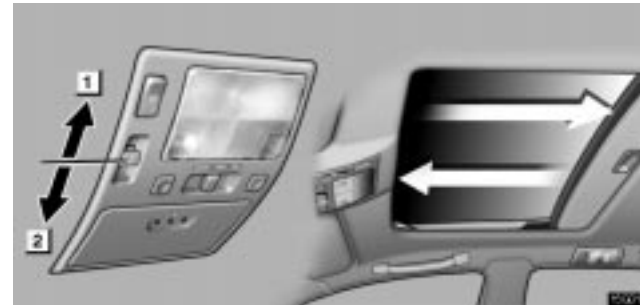
In case the opener is not actuated



Pull the manual lever toward the back.

This is used in case the fuel filler door cannot be opened due to a discharged battery or other trouble.

MOON ROOF



► **1 Open 2 Close**

To slide open the moon roof, push the switch toward the back. The moon roof will fully open. To stop partway, push the same switch or "TILT" switch.

The sun shade can be opened or closed manually. However, if you open the moon roof, the sun shade will be opened with the moon roof.

To close the moon roof, push the switch toward the front. The moon roof will fully close. To stop partway, push the same switch or "TILT" switch.



► **1** Tilt up **2** Lower

To tilt up the rear end of the moon roof fully, push the switch on the rear side or on the front side to lower it.

To operate the moon roof, the ignition key must be in the "ON" position.

Key off operation: Even if the ignition key is turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position, the moon roof can be operated until any of the doors is opened (or for about 45 seconds).

Operating the moon roof from outside the vehicle

The moon roof can be closed or opened using an ignition key.*

Insert the ignition key into the key hole on the driver's door.

To close the moon roof: Turn the key in the locking direction and hold it.

After the door is locked, the moon roof begins to close. To stop in the middle, return the key.

To open the moon roof: Turn the key in the unlocking direction and hold it.

After the door is unlocked, the moon roof begins to open. To stop in the middle, return the key.

*NOTE: *This feature can be set inoperative, or sliding open or tilting up can be selected. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

EXTERIOR EQUIPMENT

Jam protection function

During closing operation, the moon roof stops and is open if something gets caught into the roof opening.

If the moon roof receives a strong impact, this function may work even if nothing is caught.

- Never try jamming any part of your body to make the jam protection function work intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closed.



CAUTION

To avoid serious personal injury, you must do the following.

- While the vehicle is moving, always keep the heads, hands and other parts of the bodies of all occupants away from the roof opening. Otherwise, they could be seriously injured if the vehicle stops suddenly or if the vehicle is involved in an accident.
- Always make sure nobody places his/her head, hands and other parts of the body in the roof opening before you close the roof. If someone's neck, head or hands gets caught in the closing roof, it could result in a serious injury. When anyone closes the roof, first make sure it is safe to do so.
- Never leave small children alone in the vehicle, especially with the ignition key still inserted. They could use the moon roof switches and get trapped in the roof opening. Unattended children can be involved in serious accidents.
- Never sit on top of the vehicle around the roof opening.

SECTION 1 – 6

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Comfort adjustment

Front seats	74
Head restraints	77
Tilt and telescopic steering wheel	79
Outside rear view mirrors	80
Inside rear view mirror	82
Seat belts	86
SRS airbags	94
Child restraint	108
Driving position memory system	127

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

FRONT SEATS

Front seat precautions



CAUTION

The side airbags are installed in the driver and front passenger seats, observe the following precautions.

- Do not lean over the front door when the vehicle is in use. The side airbag inflates with considerable speed and force; you may be killed or severely injured.
- Do not use accessories for the seats which cover the parts where the side airbags inflate. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, causing death or serious injury.
- Do not modify or replace the seats or upholstery of the seats with side airbags. Such changes may disable the system, or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury. Consult your Lexus dealer if you insist on modifications of this kind.

Seat adjustment precautions

Adjust the driver's seat so that the foot pedals, steering wheel and instrument panel controls are within easy reach of the driver.



CAUTION

- Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Be careful not to hit the seat against a passenger, luggage or the rear seat.

NOTICE

Do not operate the control switch in more than one dimension at a time. It may cause electrical overload.

Adjusting front seats



- **1** *Seat position control switch, seat cushion angle and height control switch*
- 2** *Seatback angle control switch*
- 3** *Lumbar support control switch*

Adjusting seat position



Move the control switch in the desired direction.

Releasing the switch will stop the seat in that position. Do not place anything under the seat. It might interfere with the seat movement.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

Adjusting seatback angle



Move the control switch in the desired direction.

Releasing the switch will stop the seatback in that position.

Adjusting seat cushion angle and height



Move the control switch in the desired direction.

Releasing the switch will stop the seat cushion in that position.



CAUTION

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, avoid reclining the seatback any more than needed. The seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the passenger are sitting up straight and well back in the seats. If you are reclined, the lap belt may slide past your hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen. Therefore, in the event of a frontal collision, the risk of personal injury may increase with increasing recline of the seatback.

Adjusting lumbar support



Push the control switch on either side.

The amount of lumbar support will change as long as the switch is pushed.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

Front seats



To raise the head restraint, pull it up. To lower it, press the lock release button and push the head restraint down. To move the head restraint forward or rearward, pull or push on the top.

The head restraint is most effective when it is close to your head. Therefore, using a cushion on the seatback is not recommended.

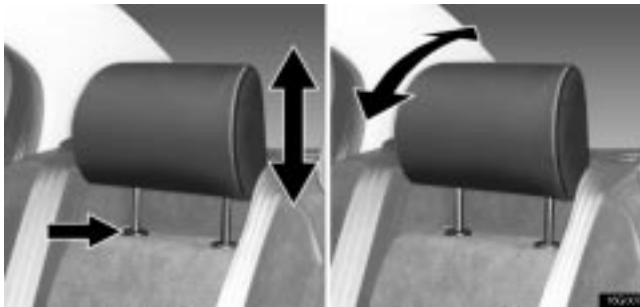
COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



CAUTION

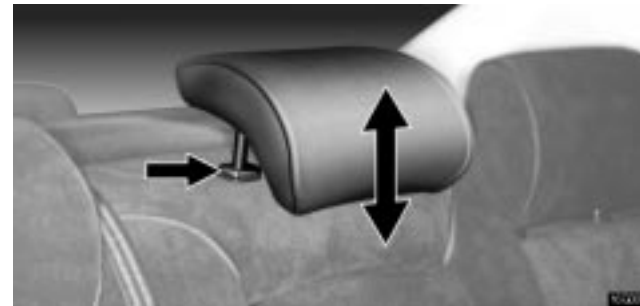
- Adjust the center of the head restraint so that it is closest to the top of your ears.
- After adjusting the head restraint, make sure it is locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

Rear seats



► Outside rear seats

To raise the head restraint, pull it up. To lower it, press the lock release button and push the head restraint down. To move the head restraint forward or rearward, pull or push on the top.



► Center rear seat

To raise the head restraint, pull it up. To lower it, press the lock release button and push the head restraint down.

The head restraint is most effective when it is close to your head. Therefore, using a cushion on the seatback is not recommended.

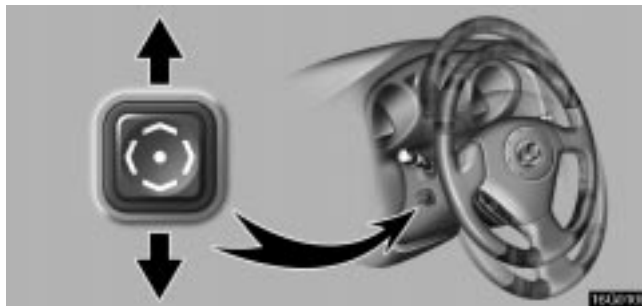


CAUTION

- Adjust the center of the head restraint so that it is closest to the top of your ears.
- After adjusting the head restraint, make sure it is locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

TILT AND TELESCOPIC STEERING WHEEL

Adjustment of steering wheel tilt

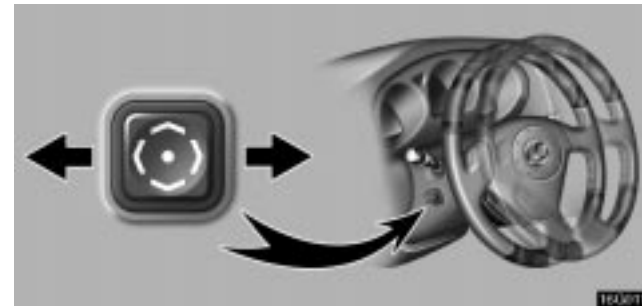


To adjust the tilt of the steering wheel, push the control switch upward or downward to set it to the desired position.

CAUTION

Do not adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving. It may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.

Adjustment of telescopic steering column



To adjust the steering column length, push the control switch forward or backward to set the steering wheel to the desired position.

CAUTION

Do not adjust the steering column while the vehicle is moving. It may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

Auto tilt away*



When the ignition key is removed, the steering column moves forward away from the driver and also tilts up for easy exit and entry.

When the key is inserted in the ignition switch, the steering column returns to the previously set position.

*NOTE: *This feature can be set inoperative. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

OUTSIDE REAR VIEW MIRRORS



Adjust the mirror so that you can just see the side of your vehicle in the mirror.

When the inside rear view mirror darkens in "AUTO" mode, the outside rear view mirrors also darken to reduce the reflection of the headlights of the following vehicle. For details, see "Inside rear view mirror" on page 82.

When you push the rear window defogger switch, the heater panels in the outside rear view mirrors will quickly clear the mirror surface.

CAUTION

- Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is moving. It may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

- Since the mirror surfaces can get hot, keep your hands off them when the rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger switch is on.

Power rear view mirror control



► **1** Master switch **2** Control switch

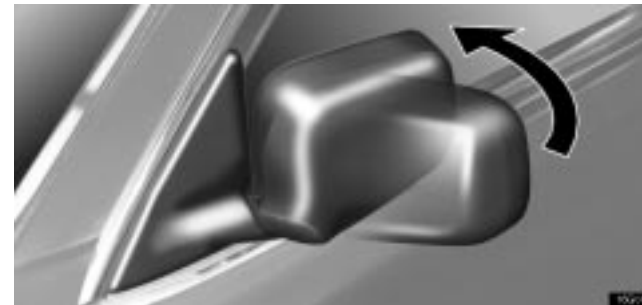
To adjust the power rear view mirror, first place the master switch at "L" (left) or "R" (right), and push the control switch on the desired side.

The power rear view mirror can be adjusted when the key is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

NOTICE

If ice should jam the mirror, do not operate the control or scrape the mirror face. Use a spray de-icer to free the mirror.

Folding rear view mirrors



To fold the rear view mirror, push backward.

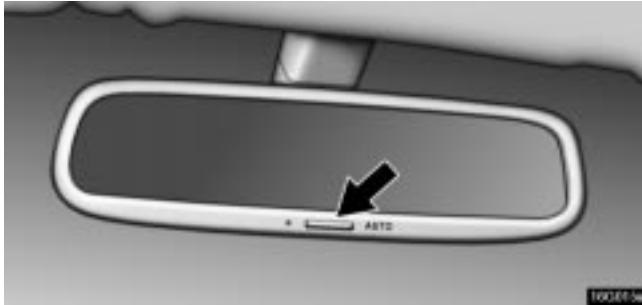
The rear view mirrors can be folded backward for parking in restricted areas.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not drive with the mirrors folded backward. Both the driver and passenger side rear view mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

INSIDE REAR VIEW MIRROR



Adjust the mirror so that you can just see the rear of your vehicle in the mirror.

Pushing the switch changes the mode between "AUTO" and "DAY".

The indicator comes on when the "AUTO" mode is selected.

"DAY" mode: The mirror surface is normal.

"AUTO" mode: If the mirror detects light from the headlights of the vehicle behind you, the mirror surface darkens slightly to reduce the reflected light.

When the inside rear view mirror surface changes, the outside rear view mirror surfaces will also become darker.

When the ignition key is inserted and turned on, the inside rear view mirror always turns on in the "AUTO" mode.

CAUTION

Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is moving. It may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.

Compass (Some models)

The compass indicates the direction in which the vehicle is heading. The illustration shown above indicates the vehicle is heading north.

Displays	Directions
N	North
NE	Northeast
E	East
SE	Southeast
S	South
SW	Southwest
W	West
NW	Northwest

Pushing the button for longer than 3 seconds turns on or off the compass display.

The compass may not show the correct direction in the following conditions:

- The vehicle is stopped immediately after turning.
The compass does not adjust while the vehicle is stopped.
- The ignition switch is turned off immediately after turning.
- The vehicle is on an inclined surface.
- The vehicle is in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields (underground parking, under a steel tower, between buildings, roof parking, near a crossing, near a large vehicle, etc.).
- The vehicle is magnetized. (There is an magnet or a metal object near the inside rear view mirror.)
- The battery has been disconnected.
- Any door is open.

The compass works to calibrate the direction automatically while the vehicle in in motion, if deviation is small.

For obtaining additional precision or for complete calibrating, see "CALIBRATING THE COMPASS" below.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

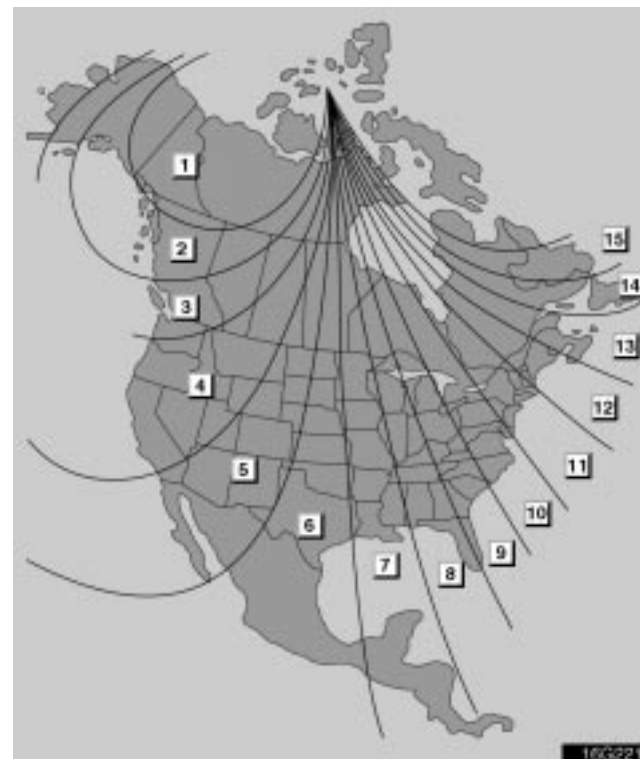
NOTICE

Do not put magnets or a metal object near the inside rear view mirror. Doing this may cause malfunction of the compass sensor.

CALIBRATING THE COMPASS (deviation calibration)

The direction display on the compass deviates from the true direction determined by the earth's magnetic field. The amount of deviation varies according to the geographic position of the vehicle.

To adjust for this deviation, stop the vehicle and push the button for longer than about 6 seconds until the number (1–15) appears on the display. Then push the button again, referring to the following map to select the number of the zone where the vehicle is.



► Zone number

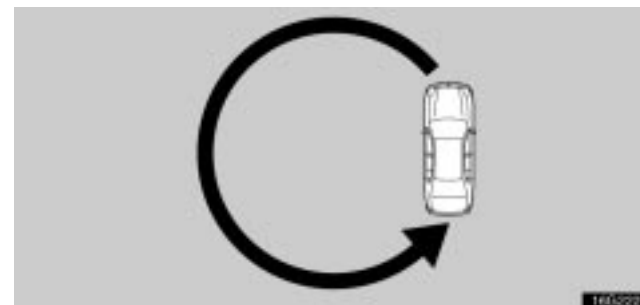
If the direction is displayed several seconds after adjustment, the calibration is finished.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not adjust the display while the vehicle is moving. Be sure to adjust the display only when the vehicle is stopped.

CALIBRATING THE COMPASS (circling calibration)

"C" appears on the display in case the circling calibration is required due to the drastic change of the magnetic field. To rectify this, follow the calibration procedure.



Drive the vehicle slowly (at 8 km/h (5 mph) or lower) in a circle until the direction is displayed. If there is not enough space to drive in a circle, drive around the block until the direction is displayed.

After driving in 1 to 3 circles in the above method, calibration is complete with the direction shown on the display.

If calibration cannot be performed because of the magnetized vehicle, etc., take your vehicle to Lexus dealer.

- Do not perform circling calibration of the compass in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields (underground parking, under a steel tower, between buildings, roof parking, near a crossing, near a large vehicle, etc.).
- During calibration, do not operate electric systems (moon roof, power windows, etc.) as they may interfere with the calibration.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



CAUTION

- When doing the circling calibration, be sure to secure a wide space, and pay attention to people and vehicles in the neighborhood. Do not violate any local traffic rules while performing circling calibration.
- Do not adjust the display while the vehicle is moving. Be sure to adjust the display only when the vehicle is stopped.

SEAT BELTS

Seat belt precautions

Lexus strongly urges that the driver and passengers in the vehicle be properly restrained at all times with the seat belts provided. Failure to do so could increase the chance of injury and/or the severity of injury in accidents.

Child. Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belts. See "Child restraint" on page 108 for details.

If a child is too large for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the rear seat and must be restrained using the vehicle's seat belt. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.

If a child must sit in the front seat, the seat belts should be worn properly. Do not let the child sit on your lap. It does not provide sufficient restraint. If an accident occurs and the seat belts are not worn properly, the force of the rapid inflation of the airbag may cause severe injury to the child.

Do not allow the child to stand up or kneel on either rear or front seats. An unrestrained child could suffer serious injury or death during emergency braking or a collision.

Pregnant woman. Lexus recommends the use of a seat belt. Ask your doctor for specific recommendations. The lap belt should be worn securely and as low as possible over the hips and not on the waist.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

Injured person. Lexus recommends the use of a seat belt. Depending on the injury, first check with your doctor for specific recommendations.

CAUTION

Persons should ride in their seats properly wearing their seat belts whenever the vehicle is moving. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer serious bodily injury or death in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

When using the seat belts, observe the following:

- Use the belt for only one person at a time. Do not use a single belt for two or more people – even children.
- Avoid reclining the seatbacks too much. The seat belts provide maximum protection when the seatbacks are in the upright position. (See "Adjusting seatback angle" on page 76.)
- Be careful not to damage the belt webbing or hardware. Take care that they do not get caught or pinched in the seat or doors.
- Inspect the belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Damaged parts should be replaced. Do not disassemble or modify the system.

- Keep the belts clean and dry. If they need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Never use bleach, dye, or abrasive cleaners – they may severely weaken the belts. (See "Cleaning the interior" on page 302 for instructions.)
- Replace the belt assembly (including bolts) if it has been used in a severe impact. The entire assembly should be replaced even if damage is not obvious.

Fastening front and rear seat belts



Adjust the seat as needed and sit up straight and well back in the seat. To fasten your belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the tab into the buckle.

You will hear a click when the tab locks into the buckle.

The seat belt length automatically adjusts to your size and the seat position.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It also may lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend, and you can move around freely.

When a passenger's shoulder belt is completely extended and is then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system securely. (For details, see "Child restraint" on page 108.) To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more.

If the seat belt cannot be pulled out of the retractor, firmly pull the belt and release it. You will then be able to smoothly pull the belt out of the retractor.



CAUTION

- After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the belt is not twisted.
- Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent you from properly latching the tab and buckle.
- If the seat belt does not function normally, immediately contact your Lexus dealer. Do not use the seat until the seat belt is fixed. It cannot protect an adult occupant or your child from injury.



Adjust the position of the lap and shoulder belts.

- 1 Position the lap belt as low as possible on your hips – not on your waist.
- 2 Adjust it to a snug fit by pulling the shoulder portion upward through the latch plate.



CAUTION

- Both high-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause serious injuries due to sliding under the lap belt during a collision or other unintended result. Keep the lap belt positioned as low on hips as possible.
- For your safety, do not place the shoulder belt under your arm.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



Adjust the shoulder anchor position to your size.

To raise the anchor position, push the anchor up. To lower the anchor position, support the anchor while you push the lock release button then slide the anchor down. After adjustment, make sure the anchor is locked in position.



To release the belt, press the buckle release button and allow the belt to retract.

If the belt does not retract smoothly, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Then make sure it remains untwisted as it retracts.

CAUTION

Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause severe injuries in a collision.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

Seat belt extender

If your seat belt cannot be fastened securely because it is not long enough, a personalized seat belt extender is available from your Lexus dealer free of charge.

Please contact your local Lexus dealer to order the proper required length for the extender. Bring the heaviest coat you expect to wear for proper measurement and selection of length. Additional ordering information is available at your Lexus dealer.



CAUTION

When using the seat belt extender, observe the following. Failure to follow these instructions could result in less effectiveness of the seat belt restraint system in case of vehicle accident, increasing the chance of personal injury.

- Never use the seat belt extender if you can fasten the seat belt without it.
- Remember that the extender provided for you may not be safe when used on a different vehicle, or for another person or at a different seating position than the one originally intended for.



To connect the extender to the seat belt, insert the tab into the seat belt buckle so that the "PRESS" signs on the buckle release buttons of the extender and the seat belt are both facing outward as shown.

You will hear a click when the tab locks into the buckle.

When releasing the seat belt, press on the buckle release button on the extender, not on the seat belt. This helps prevent damage to the vehicle interior and extender itself.

When not in use, remove the extender and store in the vehicle for future use.

 CAUTION

- After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the belt is not twisted.
- Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent you from properly latching the tab and buckle.
- If the seat belt does not function normally, immediately contact your Lexus dealer. Do not use the seat until the seat belt is fixed. It cannot protect an adult occupant or your child from injury.

Front seat belt pretensioners



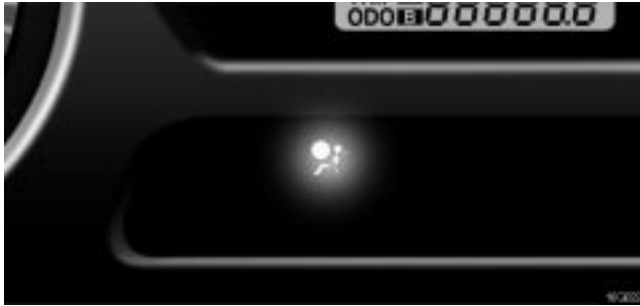
The driver and front passenger's seat belt pretensioners are designed to be activated in response to a severe frontal impact.

When the airbag sensor detects the shock of a severe frontal impact, the front seat belts are quickly drawn back by the retractor so that the belts snugly restrain the front seat occupants.

The front seat belt pretensioners will not activate when no passenger is sitting in the front seat.

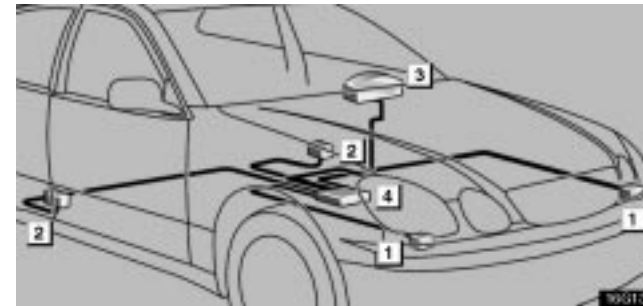
Collisions occurring at certain speeds and angles may cause the seat belt pretensioners and SRS airbags not to operate all together.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



This indicator comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. It goes off after about 6 seconds. This means the front seat belt pretensioners are operating properly.

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side airbag sensors, curtain shield airbag sensors, front seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, warning light, interconnecting wiring and power sources. (For details, see "Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers" on page 41.)



- **1 Front airbag sensor**
- 2 Front seat belt pretensioner assembly**
- 3 SRS warning light**
- 4 Airbag sensor assembly**

The front seat belt pretensioner system consists mainly of the above components, and their locations are shown in the illustration.

The front seat belt pretensioners are controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and airbag sensor.

When the front seat belt pretensioners are activated, an operating noise may be heard and a small amount of smoke-like gas may be released. This gas is harmless and does not indicate that a fire is occurring.

Once the front seat belt pretensioners have been activated, the seat belt retractors remain locked.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

CAUTION

Do not modify, remove, strike or open the front seat belt pretensioner assemblies, airbag sensor or surrounding area or wiring. Doing any of these may cause sudden operation of the front seat belt pretensioners or disable the system, which could result in death or serious injury.

Failure to follow the instruction can result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

Do not perform any of the following changes without consulting your Lexus dealer. Such changes can interfere with proper operation of the front seat belt pretensioners in some cases.

- *Installation of electronic devices such as a mobile two-way radio, cassette tape player or compact disc player.*
- *Repairs on or near the front seat belt retractor assemblies.*
- *Modification of the suspension system.*
- *Modification of the front end structure.*
- *Attachment of a grille guard (bull bar, kangaroo bar, etc.), snowplow, winches or any other equipment to the front end.*

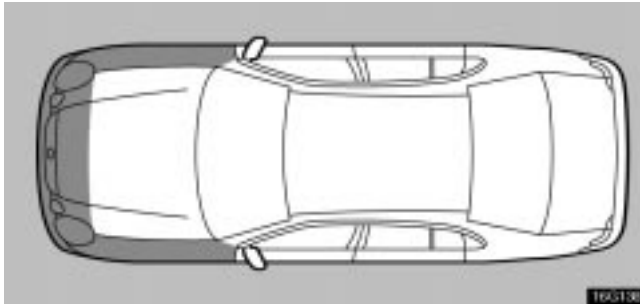
- *Repairs made on or near the front fenders, front end structure or console.*



This front seat belt pretensioner system has a service reminder indicator to inform the driver of operating problems. If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the pretensioners. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.

- When the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, the light does not come on or flashes.
- The light flashes while driving.
- If either front seat belt does not retract or cannot be pulled out due to a malfunction or activation of the relevant front pretensioner.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

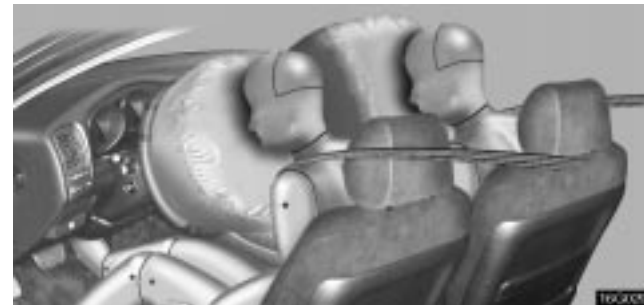


In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

- The front parts of the vehicle (shaded in the illustration) were involved in an accident that did not cause the front seat belt pretensioners to operate.
- Either front seat belt pretensioner assembly or surrounding area is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

SRS AIRBAGS

The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) airbags are designed to provide further protection for the driver and front passenger in addition to the primary safety protection provided by the seat belts.



► *Driver and front passenger airbags*

In response to a severe frontal impact, the driver and front passenger airbags work together with the seat belts to help reduce injury by inflating. The driver and front passenger airbags help to reduce injuries mainly to the driver's or front passenger's head or chest directly hitting the steering wheel or dashboard.

The front passenger airbag will not activate when no passenger is sitting in the front seat.

Be sure to wear your seat belt properly.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

Your vehicle is equipped with a crash sensing and diagnostic module, which will record the use of the seat belt restraint system by the driver when the front airbags are inflated.

CAUTION

The driver or front passenger too close to the steering wheel or dashboard during airbag deployment can be killed or seriously injured. Lexus strongly recommends that:

- The driver sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel while still maintaining control of the vehicle.
- The front passenger sit as far back as possible from the dashboard.
- All vehicle occupants be properly restrained using the available seat belts.



► Side airbags

In response to a severe side impact, the side airbags for the driver or front passenger work together with the seat belts to help reduce injury by inflating. The side airbags help to reduce injuries mainly to the driver's or front passenger's chest.

The side airbag on the passenger seat will not activate when no passenger is sitting in the front seat.

Be sure to wear your seat belt properly.

Your vehicle is equipped with a crash sensing and diagnostic module, which will record the use of the seat belt restraint system by the driver when the side airbags are inflated.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



CAUTION

The side airbags inflate with considerable force. To avoid potential death or serious injury when they inflate, the driver and front passenger must:

- Wear their seat belts properly.
- Remain properly seated with their back upright and against the seat at all times.



► *Curtain shield airbags*

In response to a severe side impact, the curtain shield airbags for the driver or front passenger work together with the seat belts by inflating to help reduce injury mainly to the driver's or front passenger's head.

The curtain shield airbag is activated even with no passenger in the front seat.

Be sure to wear your seat belt properly.



CAUTION

The curtain shield airbags inflate with considerable force. To avoid potential death or serious injury when they inflate, the driver and front passenger must:

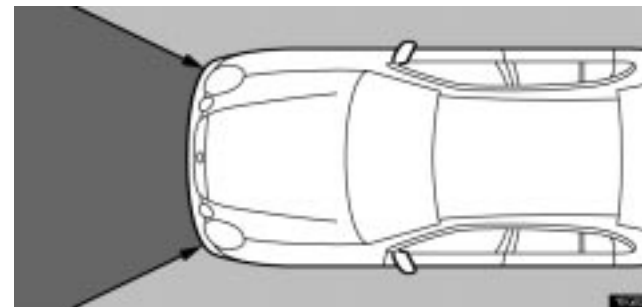
- Wear their seat belts properly.
- Remain properly seated with their back upright and against the seat at all times.

Your vehicle is equipped with a crash sensing and diagnostic module, which will record the use of the seat belt restraint system by the driver when the curtain shield airbags are inflated.



The indicator comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. It goes off after about 6 seconds. This means the SRS airbags are operating properly.

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side airbag sensors, curtain shield airbag sensors, front seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, warning light, interconnecting wiring and power sources. (For details, see "Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers" on page 41.)



The front airbags are designed to activate in response to a severe frontal impact within the shaded area between the arrows in the illustration.

The front airbags will work if the severity of the impact is above the designed threshold level, comparable to an approximate 25 km/h (15 mph) collision in the U.S.A. and 30 km (18 mph) collision in Canada when impacting straight into a fixed barrier that does not move or deform.

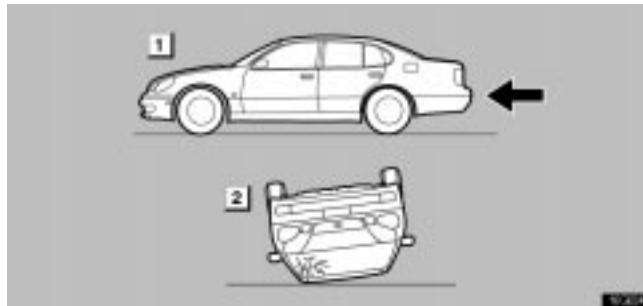
If the severity of the impact is below the above threshold level, the front airbags may not work.

However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher if the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact, or if it is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the nose of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck, etc.).

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

It is possible that in some collisions at the lower zone of airbag sensor detection and activation the SRS airbags and seat belt pretensioners will not operate all together.

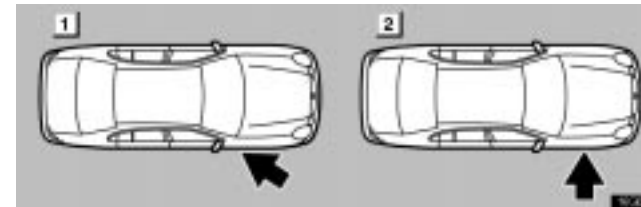
For the safety of all occupants, always wear your seat belts properly.



- **1** Collision from the rear
- 2** Vehicle rollover

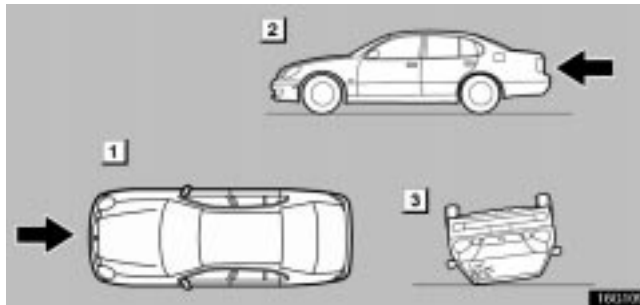
The front airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision.

The side and curtain shield airbags are designed to inflate when the passenger compartment area suffers a severe impact from the side.



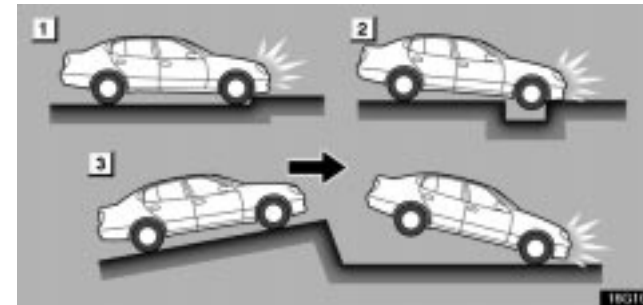
- **1** Collision from the side at an angle
- 2** Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment

The side and curtain shield airbags may not inflate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment as shown in the illustration.



- **1** Collision from the front
- **2** Collision from the rear
- **3** Vehicle rollover

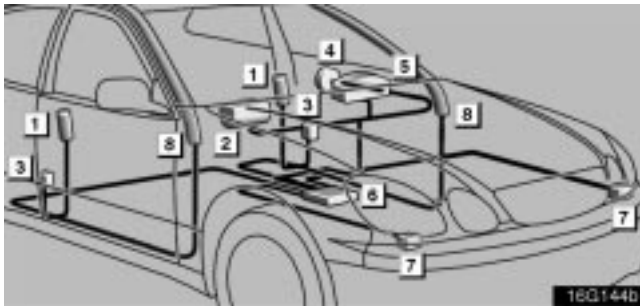
The side and curtain shield airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a front or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.



- **1** Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard material
- **2** Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- **3** Landing hard or vehicle falling

The SRS airbags may deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



- **1 Side airbag module (airbag and inflator)**
- 2 Airbag module for front passenger (airbag and inflator)**
- 3 Side and curtain shield airbag sensors**
- 4 Airbag module for driver (airbag and inflator)**
- 5 SRS warning light**
- 6 Airbag sensor assembly**
- 7 Front airbag sensors**
- 8 Curtain shield airbag module (airbag and inflator)**

The SRS airbag system consists mainly of the above components, and their locations are shown in the illustration.

The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and airbag sensors.

In a severe frontal impact, the driver and front passenger airbag sensors detect deceleration and the system triggers the front airbag inflators. In a severe side impact, the side and curtain shield airbag sensor triggers the side and curtain shield airbag inflator. Then a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the forward or lateral motion of the occupants.

When the SRS operates, it produces a fairly loud noise and release some smoke and residue along with non-toxic gas. This does not indicate a fire. This gas is normally harmless; however, for those who have delicate skin, it may cause a minor skin irritation. Be sure to wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent any potential skin irritation.

Deployment of the airbags happens in a fraction of a second, so the airbags must inflate with considerable force. While the system is designed to reduce serious injuries, it may also cause minor burns or abrasions and swelling.

Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, dashboard, front seats) may be hot for several minutes, but the airbags themselves will not be hot. The airbags are designed to inflate only once.

A crash severe enough to inflate the driver and front passenger airbags may break the windshield as the vehicle buckles. In vehicles with a front passenger airbag, the windshield may also be damaged by absorbing some of the force of the inflating airbag.

⚠ CAUTION

- The SRS airbag system is designed only as a supplement to the primary protection of the driver side and front passenger side seat belt systems. The front seat occupants can be killed or seriously injured by the inflating airbags if they do not wear the available seat belts properly. During sudden braking just before a collision, an unrestrained driver or front passenger can move forward into direct contact with or close proximity to the airbag which may then deploy during the collision. To ensure maximum protection in an accident, the driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. Wearing a seat belt properly during an accident reduces the chances of death or serious injury or being thrown out of the vehicle. For instructions and precautions concerning the seat belt system, see "Seat belts" on page 86.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by the deploying airbags. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seat of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seat is the safest for infants and children. For instructions concerning the installation of a child restraint system, see "Child restraint" on page 108 .



- Never put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat because the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



► *Move seat fully back*

- A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be put on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible, because the force of the deploying front passenger airbags could cause death or serious injury to the child. Do not allow the child to lean against the front door or around the front door even if the child is seated in a child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side and curtain shield airbag inflates, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- For instructions concerning the installation of a child restraint system, see "Child restraint" on page 108.



- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean over the dashboard when the vehicle is in use. The front passenger airbags inflate with considerable speed and force; you may be killed or seriously injured. Sit up straight and well back in the seat, and always use your seat belt properly.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



- Do not lean against the front door when the vehicle is in use. The side and curtain shield airbags inflate with considerable speed and force; you may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not apply excessive weight to the outer side of the front seats.



- Do not allow a child to kneel on the front passenger seat facing the front passenger's side door when the vehicle is in use. The side and curtain shield airbags inflate with considerable speed and impact; the child may be killed or seriously injured.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



- Do not allow a child to stand up, or to kneel on the front passenger seat. The front airbag inflates with considerable speed and force; the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not hold a child on your lap or in your arms. Use a child restraint system in the rear seat. For instructions concerning the installation of a child restraint system, see "Child restraint" on page 108.



- Do not put objects or your pets on or in front of the dashboard or steering wheel pad that houses the driver and front passenger airbag system. They might restrict inflation or cause death or serious injury as they are projected rearward by the force of the deploying airbags. Likewise, the driver and front passenger should not hold things in their arms or on their knees.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



- Do not attach a cup holder or any other device or object on or around the door. When the side airbag inflates, the cup holder or any other device or object will be thrown with great force, or the side airbag may not activate correctly, resulting in death or serious injury. Likewise, the driver and front passenger should not hold things in their arms or on their knees.



- Do not attach a microphone or any other device or object around the part where the curtain shield airbag activates such as on the windshield glass, side door glass and front and side pillar. When the curtain shield airbag inflates, the microphone or other device or object will be thrown with great force or the curtain shield airbag may not activate correctly, resulting in death or serious injury.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

- Do not use accessories for the seats which cover the parts where the side airbags inflate. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, causing death or serious injury.
- Do not modify or remove any wiring. Do not modify, remove, strike or open any components, such as the steering wheel pad, steering wheel, column cover, front passenger airbag cover, front seats or airbag sensor assembly. Doing any of these may cause sudden SRS front airbags inflation or disable the system, which could result in death or serious injury.
- Do not modify or replace the seats or upholstery of the front seats with side airbags. Such changes may disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury. Consult your Lexus dealer if you insist on modifications of this kind.
- Do not disassemble or repair the front pillar and roof side containing the curtain shield airbags. Such changes may disable the system or cause the curtain shield airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury. Consult your Lexus dealer if you insist on modifications of this kind.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

Do not perform any of the following changes without consulting your Lexus dealer. Such changes can interfere with proper operation of the SRS airbag system in some cases.

- *Installation of electronic devices such as a mobile two-way radio, cassette tape player or compact disc player.*
- *Modification of the suspension system.*
- *Modification of the front end structure and side structure of the passenger compartment.*
- *Attachment of a grille guard (bull bar, kangaroo bar, etc.), snowplow, winches or any other equipment to the front end.*
- *Repairs made on or near the front fenders, front end structure, console, steering column, steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or front seats.*



This SRS airbag system has an indicator to inform the driver of operating problems. If either of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the airbags. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.

- When the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, the light does not come on, stays on or flashes.
- The light comes on or starts flashing while driving.

If the light stays on, it indicates that the driver and front passenger airbags fail. If the light flashes, the side airbags fail.



In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible:

- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.
- The front part of the vehicle and portion of the doors (shaded in the illustration) were involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

- The surface of the seats with the side airbags or the pad section of the steering wheel or front passenger airbag cover (shaded in the illustration) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.
- The portion of the front pillar garnish (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside (shaded in the illustration) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

CHILD RESTRAINT

Child restraint precautions

Lexus strongly urges the use of child restraint systems for children small enough to use them.

The laws of all fifty states in the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of a child restraint system.

Your vehicle conforms to SAE J1819.

If a child is too large for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the rear seat and must be restrained using the vehicle's seat belt. See "Seat belts" on page 86 for details.

CAUTION

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained using a seat belt or child restraint depending on age and size. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior if you are unrestrained.
- Lexus strongly urges use of a proper child restraint which conforms to the size of the child, and is put on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.

- **Never put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front seat. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the airbag can cause death or serious injury if a rear-facing child restraint system is put on the front seat.**
- **Unless it is unavoidable, do not put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat.**
- **A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be put on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible, because the force of the deploying front passenger airbag could cause death or serious injury to the child.**
- **Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. Do not allow the child to lean over the front door or around the front door even if the child is seated in a child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side and curtain shield airbag inflates, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.**

Child restraint system

A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt. You must carefully consult the manufacturer's instructions which accompany the child restraint system.

To provide proper restraint, use a child restraint system following the manufacturer's instructions about the appropriate age and size of the child for the restraint system.

Install the child restraint system correctly following the instructions provided by its manufacturer. General directions are also provided under the following illustrations.

The child restraint system should be installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



CAUTION

- **Never put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front seat. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the airbag can cause death or serious injury if a rear-facing child restraint system is put on the front seat.**
- **Unless it is unavoidable, do not put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat.**
- **A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be put on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible, because the force of the deploying front passenger airbag could cause death or serious injury to the child. Do not allow the child to lean over the front door or around the front door even if the child is seated in a child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side and curtain shield airbag inflates, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.**
- **After installing the child restraint system, make sure it is secured in place according to the manufacturer's instructions. If it is not restrained securely, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.**

When not using the child restraint system, keep it secured with the seat belt or place it in the trunk or somewhere other than in the passenger compartment. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

Your vehicle has anchor brackets for securing the top strap of a child restraint system.

For instructions about how to use the anchor bracket, see "Using a top strap" on page 123.

Types of child restraint system

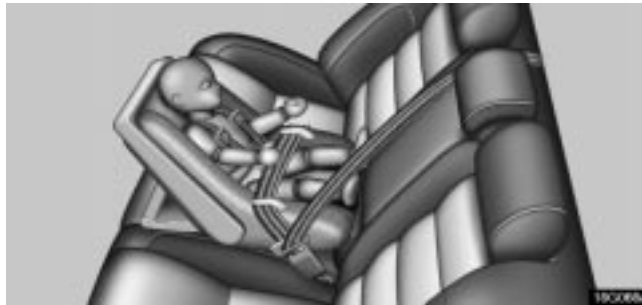
Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types depending on the child's age and size.

- (A) Infant seat
- (B) Convertible seat
- (C) Booster seat

Install the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.

Child restraint lower anchorages approved for your vehicle may also be used. See "Installation with child restraint lower anchorages" on page 124 in this section.

(A) Infant seat



(B) Convertible seat



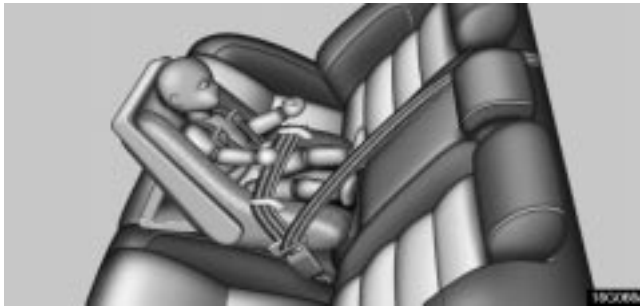
(C) Booster seat



COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

INSTALLATION WITH 3-POINT TYPE SEAT BELT

(A) Infant seat installation



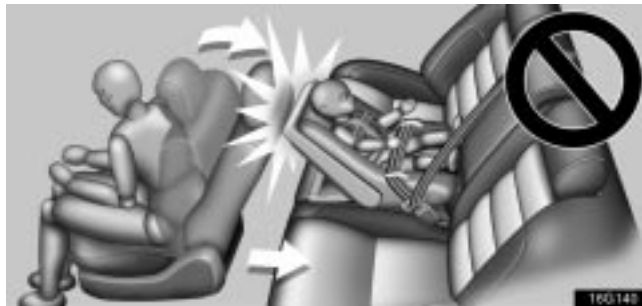
An infant seat is used in rear-facing position only.



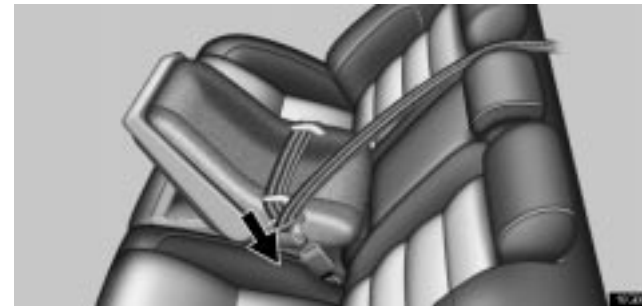
CAUTION

- Never put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat because the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



- If your driving seat position is not satisfactory, do not install the child restraint system on the rear left seat.

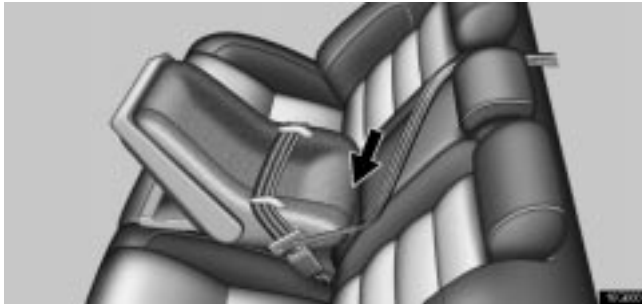


1. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the infant seat following the instructions provided by its manufacturer and inserting the tab into the buckle taking care not to twist the belt. Keep the lap portion of the belt tight.

CAUTION

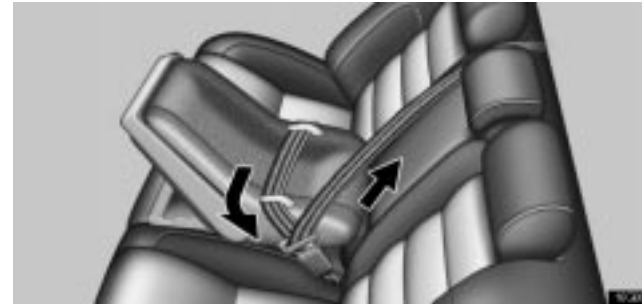
- After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap and shoulder portions of the belt are not twisted.
- Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent you from properly latching the tab and buckle.
- If the seat belt does not function normally, immediately contact your Lexus dealer. Do not use the seat until the seat belt is fixed. It cannot protect your child from injury.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



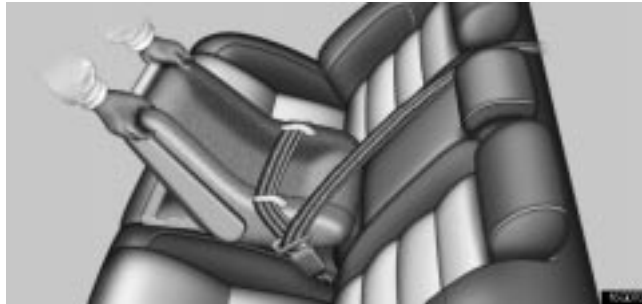
2. Fully extend the shoulder belt to put it in the lock mode. When the belt is then retracted even slightly, it cannot be extended.

To hold the infant seat securely, make sure the belt is in the lock mode before letting the belt retract.



3. While pressing the infant seat firmly against the seat cushion and seatback, let the shoulder belt retract as far as it will go to hold the infant seat securely.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



CAUTION

Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to be sure it is secure. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.



4. To remove the infant seat, press the buckle-release button and allow the belt to retract completely. The belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or older child passenger.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

(B) Convertible seat installation



A convertible seat is used in forward-facing or rear-facing position depending on the age and size of the child. When installing, follow the manufacturer's instructions about the appropriate age and size of the child as well as directions for installing the child restraint system.



CAUTION

- **Never put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat because the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child.**

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



► *Move seat fully back*

- A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be put on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible, because the force of the deploying front passenger airbag could cause death or serious injury to the child. Do not allow the child to lean over the front door or around the front door even if the child is seated in a child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.



- If your driving seat position is not satisfactory, do not install the child restraint system on the rear left seat.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



1. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the convertible seat following the instructions provided by its manufacturer and inserting the tab into the buckle taking care not to twist the belt. Keep the lap portion of the belt tight.



2. Fully extend the shoulder belt to put it in the lock mode. When the belt is then retracted slightly, it cannot be extended.

To hold the convertible seat securely, make sure the belt is in the lock mode before letting the belt retract.



CAUTION

- After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap and shoulder portions of the belt are not twisted.
- Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent you from properly latching the tab and buckle.
- If the seat belt does not function normally, immediately contact your Lexus dealer. Do not use the seat until the seat belt is fixed. It cannot protect your child from injury.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



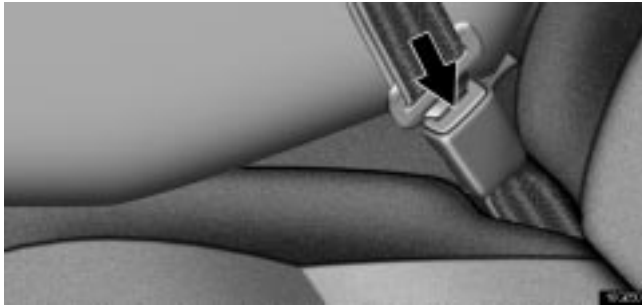
3. While pressing the convertible seat firmly against the seat cushion and seatback, let the shoulder belt retract as far as it will go to hold the convertible seat securely.



CAUTION

Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to be sure it is secure. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



4. To remove the convertible seat, press the buckle-release button and allow the belt to retract completely. The belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or older child passenger.

(C) Booster seat installation



A booster seat is used in forward-facing position only.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



► **Move seat fully back**

CAUTION

A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be put on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible, because the force of the deploying front passenger airbag could cause death or serious injury to the child. Do not allow the child to lean over the front door or around the front door even if the child is seated in a child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.



1. Sit the child on a booster seat. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the booster seat and child following the instructions provided by its manufacturer and insert the tab into the buckle.

Make sure the shoulder belt is correctly across the child's shoulder and that the lap belt is positioned as low as possible on child's hips. See "Seat belts" on page 86 for details.

CAUTION

- Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from child's neck, but not falling off child's shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause serious injuries in a collision.

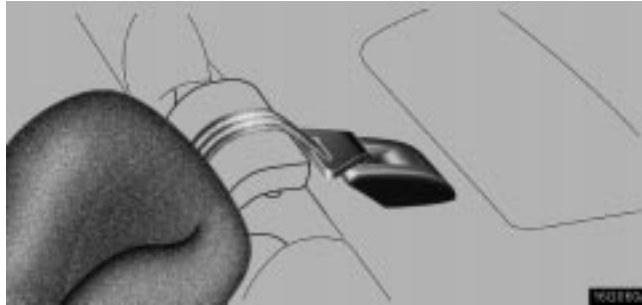
COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

- Both high-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause serious injuries due to sliding under the lap belt during a collision or other unintended result. Keep the lap belt positioned as low on a child's hips as possible.
- For child's safety, do not place the shoulder belt under child's arm.
- After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap and shoulder portions of the belt are not twisted.
- Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent your child from properly latching the tab and buckle.
- If the seat belt does not function normally, immediately contact your Lexus dealer. Do not use the seat until the seat belt is fixed. It cannot protect your child from injury.

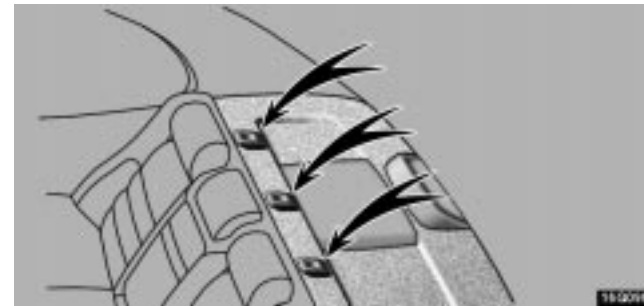


2. To remove the child restraint system, press the buckle-release button and allow the belt to retract.

Using a top strap



Follow the procedure below for a child restraint system that requires the use of a top strap.

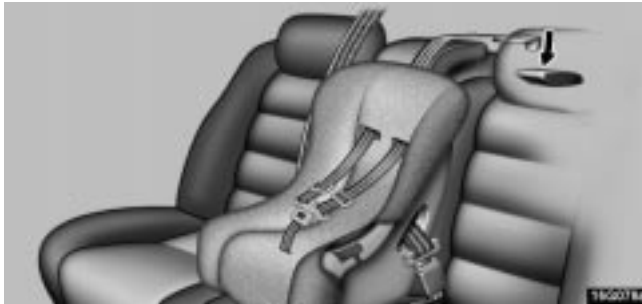


► *Anchor brackets*

Use the anchor bracket on the filler panel behind the rear seat to attach the top strap.

Anchor brackets are installed for each rear seating position.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



1. Fix the child restraint system with the seat belt.
2. Latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

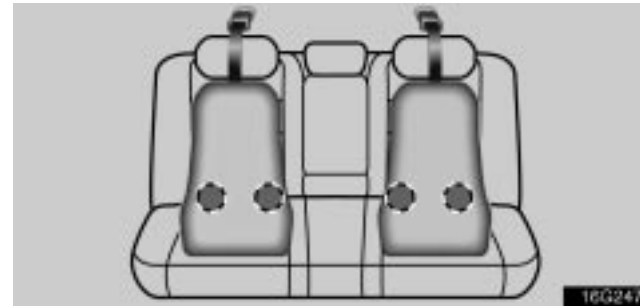
For instructions to install the child restraint system, see "Type of child restraint system" on page 111.



CAUTION

- Make sure the top strap is securely latched, and check that the child restraint system is secure by pushing and pulling it in different directions.
- Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.

INSTALLATION WITH CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHORAGES



The lower anchorages for the child restraint system interfaced with the FMVSS225 specification are installed in the rear seat.

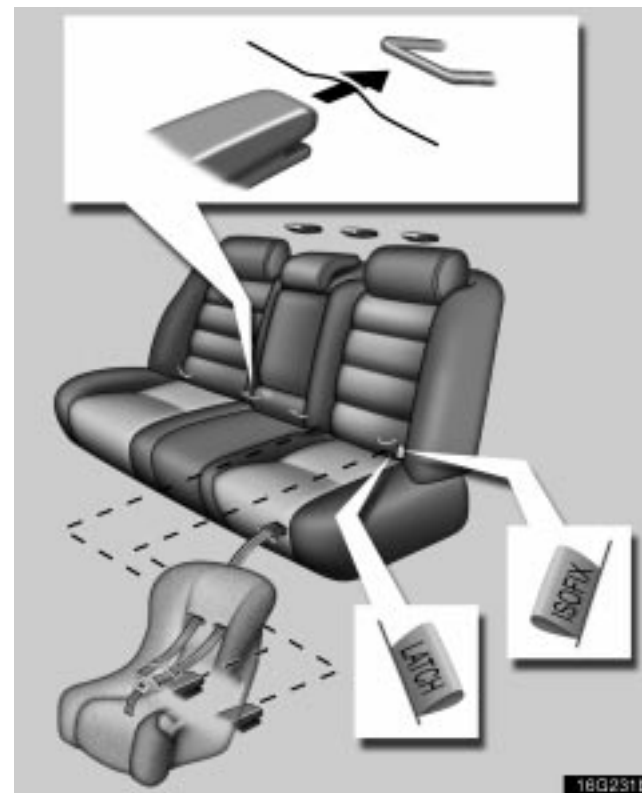
The anchorages are installed in the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback of both outside rear seats.

Child restraint system interfaced with the FMVSS225 specification can be fixed with these anchorages. In this case, it is not necessary to fix the child restraint system with a seat belt on the vehicle.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT



► Type A



► Type B

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM INSTALLATION

Type A:

1. Widen the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback a little and confirm the position of the lower anchorages below the tag in the seatback.
2. Latch the hooks of lower straps onto the anchorages and tighten the lower straps.

Type B:

1. Widen the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback a little and confirm the position of the lower anchorages below the tag in the seatback.
2. Latch the buckles onto the anchorages

If your child restraint system has a top strap, it should be anchored. (For the installation of the top strap, see “—Using a top strap” on page 123 in this section.)

For the installation details, refer to the instruction manual equipped with each product.



CAUTION

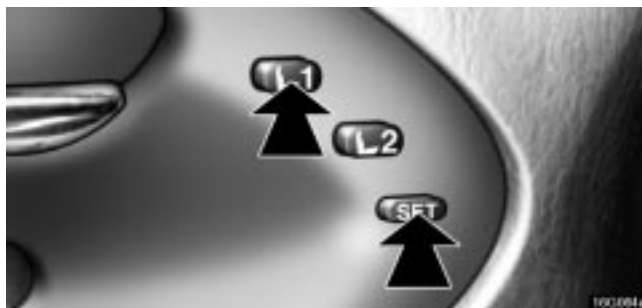
- When using the lower anchorages for the child restraint system, be sure that there are no irregular objects around the anchorages or that the seat belt is not caught.
- Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to be sure it is secure. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.
- Do not put a child restraint system on the rear seat if it interferes with the lock mechanism of the front seats. This can cause severe injury to the child and front passenger in case of sudden braking or a collision.

DRIVING POSITION MEMORY SYSTEM

The micro computer can memorize the position of the driver's seat, and the positions of the tilt and telescopic steering, and outside rear view mirrors. Two different driving position profiles can be entered into the computer's memory.

Recording a driving position in the computer's memory can only be done when the ignition key is in the "ON" position and the selector lever is in the "P" position.

Setting a driving position



1. Adjust the driver's seat, tilt and telescopic steering and outside rear view mirrors to the desired position.
2. While pushing the "SET" button, push button "1" or "2" until the signal beeps.

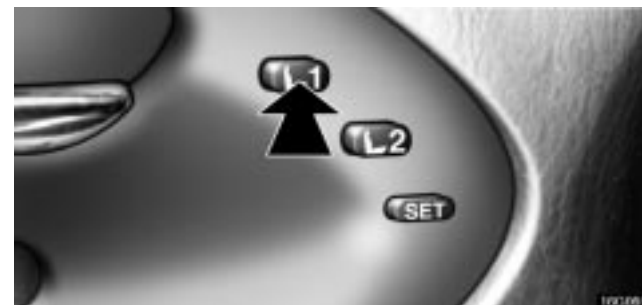
The beep sound means that the positions are recorded in the computer's memory.

By repeating these two steps and pressing the remaining button, the driving position for another driver can be recorded.

To set a new memorized position, select the desired position and perform step 2. The previous memory will be erased and the new position will be set.

To make only slight changes to an already memorized position, the easiest way is to first activate the memorized position, then make the desired changes and perform step 2 above.

Activating a memorized position



When you push button "1" or "2", the driving position will be automatically adjusted to the position recorded for that button.

COMFORT ADJUSTMENT

Conditions for memorized position activation

- Ignition key "ON" and selector lever in "P" position.
All parts of the memorized positions can be activated.
However, if the brake pedal is being depressed, the seat position will not change.
- Key not in ignition switch and within 30 seconds of opening driver's door.
The memorized position can be activated, except for the tilt and telescopic steering.

If any driving position memory switch is pushed while one of the memorized driving position profiles is being activated, the operation will stop.

To activate the system, push the desired button ("1" or "2") again.

The driving position memory control system cannot be operated while the vehicle is moving.

If the vehicle's battery is disconnected, the computer's memory will be erased and the memorized positions will have to be set again.

- Take care not to select the wrong button, or the seat could strike the rear passenger or hit your body against the steering wheel. If this happens, you can stop the movement by pressing another driving position memory switch, or depressing the brake pedal.



CAUTION

- Do not start the vehicle while the adjustments are being made.

SECTION 1 – 7

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Theft deterrent

[Theft deterrent system](#) 130

[Theft prevention labels](#) 132

THEFT DETERRENT

THEFT DETERRENT SYSTEM

To deter theft of the vehicle, this system is designed to give an alarm if any of the doors, trunk or hood is forcibly unlocked or the battery terminal is disconnected and then reconnected while the vehicle is locked.

The alarm blows the vehicle's horn and intermittently flashes the headlights, tail lights and other exterior lights.



Setting the system

1. Turn the ignition key to the "LOCK" position and remove it.

The indicator light flashes by means of the engine immobiliser system.

2. Close and lock all the doors, trunk and hood using an ignition key or wireless remote control.

INFORMATION: Locking with a key will not set the system.

The flashing indicator light will change to stay on when all the doors, trunk and hood are closed and locked.

3. After 30 seconds, the indicator starts flashing and the system is set.

Cancelling the system

When you unlock any door or trunk using wireless remote control, the system is cancelled.

INFORMATION: Unlocking with a key will activate the alarm.

Activating the system

The alarm sounds for 60 seconds if any of the following are operated:

- Unlocking any door or trunk without using wireless remote control.
- Opening the hood forcibly.
- Reconnecting the battery.

If any door is unlocked and the ignition key is not in the ignition switch during the alarm sounding, its door is automatically locked.

To stop the alarm: Use either of the following methods.

- Unlock the door or trunk using an ignition key or wireless remote control.
- Turn the ignition switch on.

Testing the system

1. Open all the windows.

2. Set the system as described above.

The front doors should be locked with the ignition key or wireless remote control. Be sure to wait until the indicator light starts flashing.

3. Unlock one of the doors from the inside.

The system should activate the alarm.

4. Unlock any of the doors with a key or the wireless remote control to cancel the system.

5. Repeat this operation for the other doors and hood.

When testing the hood, also check that the system is activated when the battery terminal is disconnected and then reconnected.

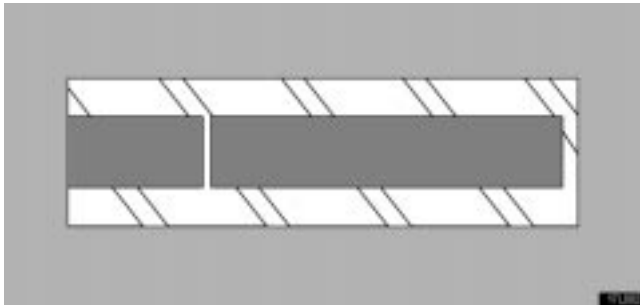
If the system does not work properly, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

Disconnecting the battery may result in the erasure of information you have set in the computer memory. After reconnecting the battery, check that the memorized data has been retained. If it has been erased, input it into the computer once more.

THEFT DETERRENT

THEFT PREVENTION LABELS (U.S.A.ONLY)



Your new vehicle carries theft prevention labels which are approximately 56 mm (2.20 in.) by 16 mm (0.63 in.).

The purpose of these labels is to reduce the incidence of vehicle thefts by facilitating the tracing and recovery of parts from stolen vehicles. The label is designed so that once it is applied to a surface, any attempt to remove it will result in destroying the integrity of the label. Transferring these labels intact from one part to another will be impossible.

NOTICE

You should not attempt to remove the theft prevention labels as it may violate certain state or federal laws.

SECTION 2 - 1

AIR CONDITIONING AND AUDIO

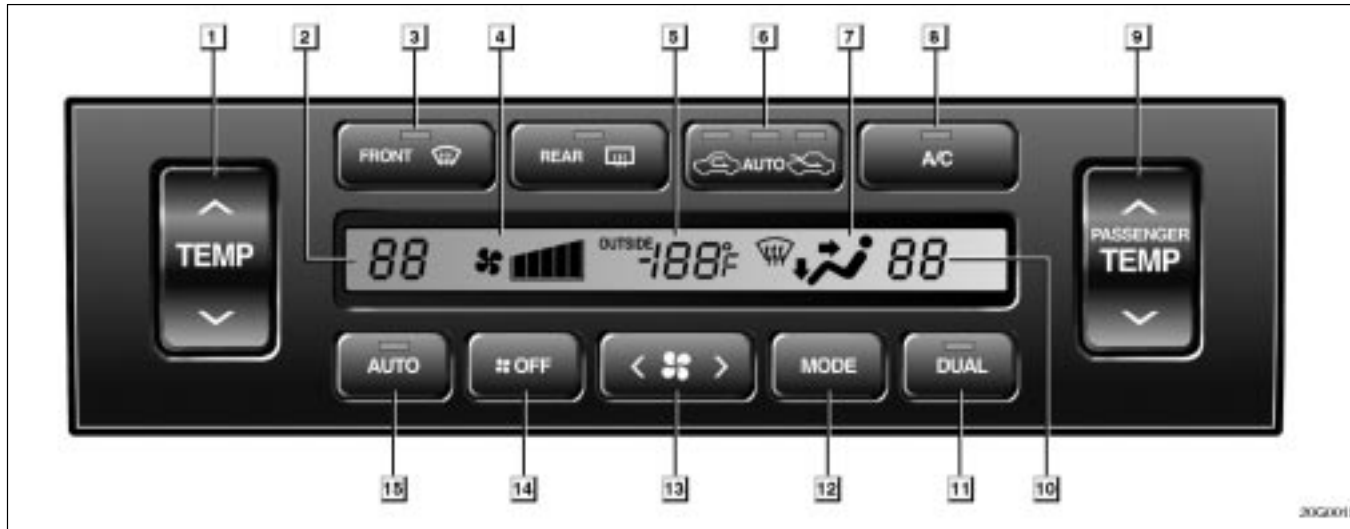
Air conditioning

Automatic air conditioning controls 134

*For vehicles equipped with Navigation System,
please refer to the separate "Owner's Manual for
Navigation System".*

AIR CONDITIONING

AUTOMATIC AIR CONDITIONING CONTROLS



- The automatic air conditioning automatically maintains the set temperature.

In the automatic operation mode, the air conditioning selects the most suitable fan speed, air flow, air intake and on-off of the air conditioning according to the temperature.

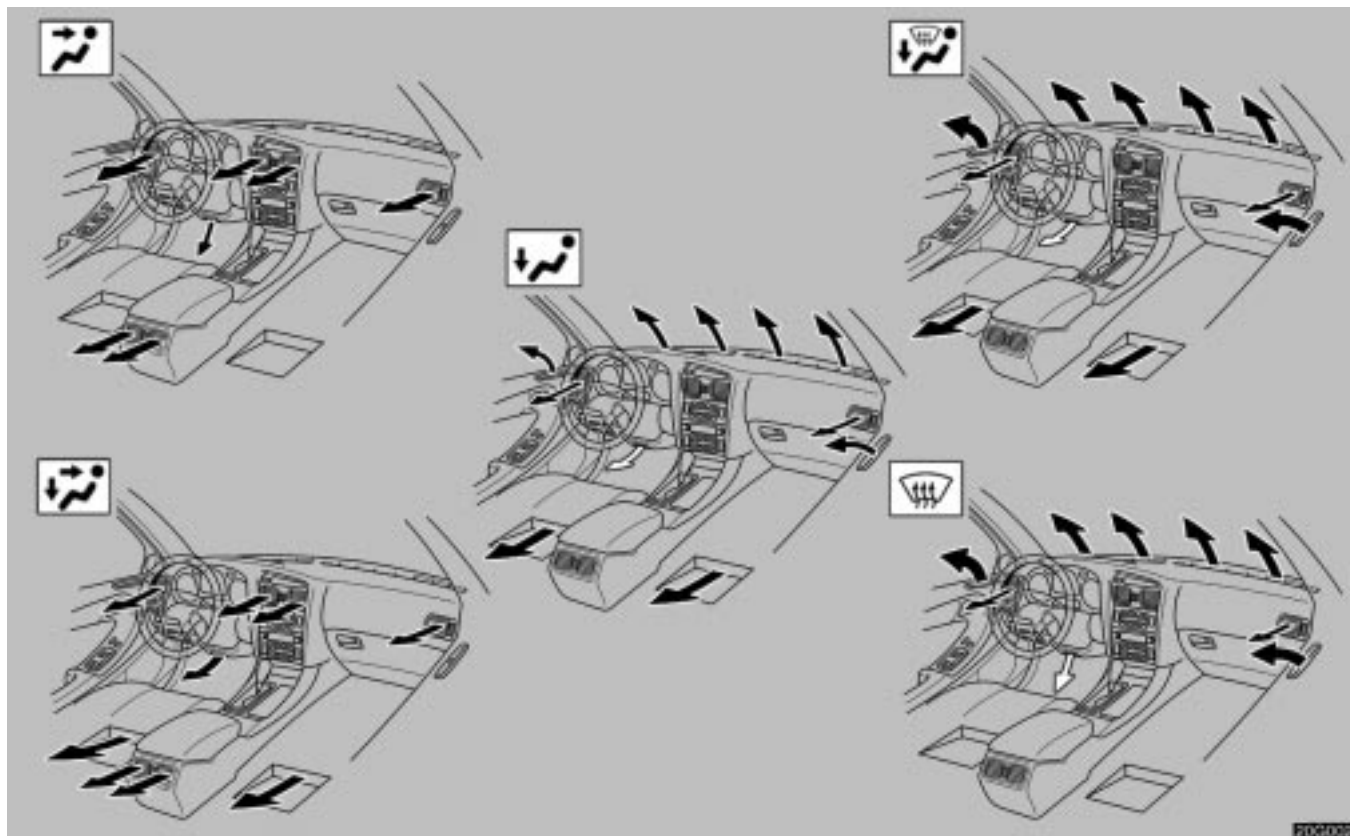
The ignition key must be in the "ON" position.

NOTICE

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the air conditioning on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

- 1** *Driver side temperature control button*
- 2** *Driver side temperature display (in degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade)*
- 3** *Front windshield button*
- 4** *Fan speed display*
- 5** *Outside temperature display (in degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade)*
- 6** *Air intake control button*
- 7** *Air flow display*
- 8** *Air conditioning on–off button*
- 9** *Passenger side temperature control button*
- 10** *Passenger side temperature display (in degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade)*
- 11** *Separate/dual control button*
- 12** *Air flow control button*
- 13** *Fan speed control button*
- 14** *OFF button*
- 15** *Automatic control button*

AIR CONDITIONING



► Air flow selection

⇒ See "Lower vents" on page 144.

(a) Climate control

SETTING OPERATION – automatic control



1. Push the "AUTO" button.

Air flow quantity, switching of the diffusers, on–off of the air conditioning, and switching of the air intake between RECIRCULATED AIR and OUTSIDE AIR are automatically adjusted. The operation status is shown by each indicator.

When one of the manual control buttons is depressed while operating in automatic mode, the mode relevant to the depressed button is set. Other conditions continue to be adjusted automatically.

It is recommended to close the lower vent. For details about it, see page 144.

Push the "OFF" button to turn the air conditioning off.



2. Use the "TEMP" or "PASSENGER TEMP" button to set the desired temperature.

The "TEMP" or "PASSENGER TEMP" button is used to set the desired temperature. The temperature will be controlled on the driver and passenger sides simultaneously or individually.

"TEMP" button – Changes the temperature on the driver and passenger sides simultaneously or the driver side only.

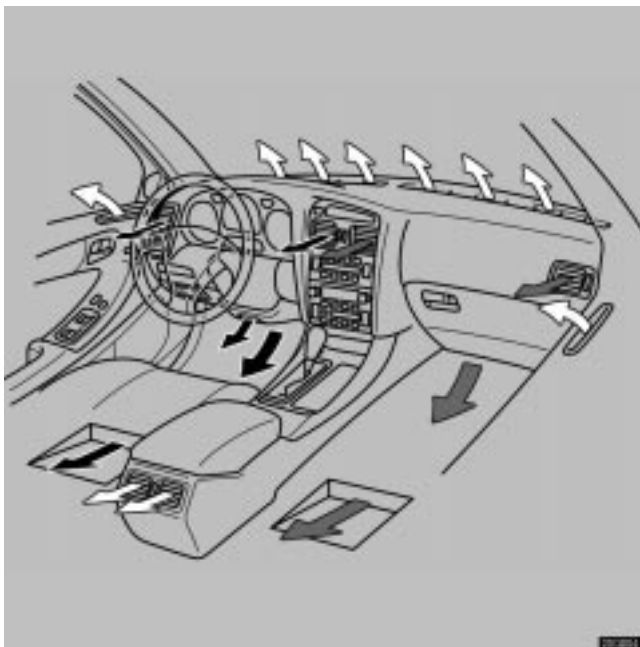
"PASSENGER TEMP" button – Changes the temperature on the passenger side only.

"DUAL" button – Changes the mode of the temperature setting.

The indicator on the "DUAL" button has two modes:

- **With the indicator on** – For individual temperature setting
- **With the indicator off** – For simultaneous temperature setting

AIR CONDITIONING

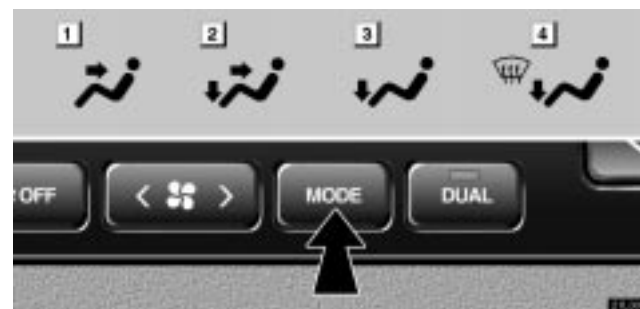


- ➡ Driver side setting
- ➡ Passenger side setting
- ⇄ Mixed setting

SETTING OPERATION – manual control

When one of the manual control buttons is depressed while operating in automatic mode, the mode relevant to the depressed button is set. Other conditions continue to be adjusted automatically.

If manual air flow selection is desired –



The outlets from which air is delivered can be selected manually by pushing the button. The function of each mode is as follows:

- 1 Panel** – Air flows mainly from the instrument panel vents.
- 2 Bi-level** – Air flows from both the floor vents and the instrument panel vents.
- 3 Floor** – Air flows mainly from the floor vents.

It is recommended to close the lower vent. For details about it, see page 144.

- 4 Floor/Windshield** – Air flows mainly from the floor vents and windshield vents.

It is recommended to close the lower vent. For details about it, see page 144.

If quick heating or cooling is desired –

Push the "TEMP" or "PASSENGER TEMP" button on either side and hold it until the maximum figure or minimum figure appears on the display.

If manual fan speed control is desired –



- **1 Fan speed at low** **2 Fan speed at high**

The fan speed can be set to your desired speed by pushing the appropriate side of fan speed control button. The higher the fan speed is, the more air is delivered. Pushing the "OFF" button turns off the fan.

To remove exterior windshield frost, use the high speed setting.

If manual switching of air intake is desired –



Each time you push the air intake control button, the mode changes in order from the RECIRCULATED AIR mode to AUTOMATIC mode to OUTSIDE AIR mode, then back to the RECIRCULATED AIR mode. Each indicator light shows which mode is now selected.

- 1 RECIRCULATED mode** – If quick circulation of cooled air is desired, select this mode.
- 2 EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode** – If the outside air contains harmful substances like exhaust gas (i.e., when the vehicle running just in front of your vehicle accelerates rapidly), the system changes automatically from the OUTSIDE AIR mode (with indicators **2** and **3** on) to the RECIRCULATED mode (with indicators **1** and **2** on).
- 3 OUTSIDE AIR mode** – The system will take fresh outside air into the vehicle.

AIR CONDITIONING

Turning off the air conditioning manually will cancel the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode. If you select the "AUTO" mode during fan operating, the air conditioning turns on and the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode will operate.

For normal use, it is best to keep the air intake control button set to OUTSIDE AIR mode. If recirculated air is used during heating, the windows will fog up more easily.

To change the sensitivity of the sensor switching between the RECIRCULATED and OUTSIDE AIR in the AUTOMATIC mode, push the air intake control button until the "AUTO" indicator light flashes. The display changes as illustrated below.

The sensitivity of the sensor can be adjusted only while the vehicle has stopped.



Each time you push the "TEMP" button, the sensitivity changes from "+3" down to "-3". If you do not operate any button for a few seconds or if you push the button other than the air intake control button and driver side temperature control button, the previous display returns.

If manual on-off of the air conditioning is desired –

Push the "A/C" button to turn the air conditioning on and push it again to turn the air conditioning off. If you turn off the air conditioning manually, the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode will be cancelled.

If the outside temperature is lowered down to around 0°C (32°F), the air conditioning will turn off automatically. At this time, the indicator on the A/C button is off and the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC indicator light remains on. However, the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode does not operate. When the air conditioning turns on as with the raised temperature, the EXHAUST GAS AUTOMATIC mode resumes.

If the system is used for ventilation, heating in dry weather or removing frost or exterior fog on the windshield, turn the air conditioning off once it is no longer required. This will improve fuel economy. The air conditioning can be used for year-round automatic temperature control including cooling and dehumidifying operation.

If the air conditioning compressor does not operate, the indicator of the "A/C" button will blink. If the indicator of the "A/C" button blinks even when the "A/C" button is pushed again, have the compressor checked by your nearest Lexus dealer.

Displaying the outside temperature –

The temperature display ranges from –30°C (–22°F) up to 50°C (122°F).

(b) Windshield defogging and defrosting



To remove interior fog on the windshield –

Push the "FRONT WINDSHIELD" button.

To remove frost or exterior fog on the windshield –

1. Place the temperature control button at the maximum temperature.
2. Push the "FRONT WINDSHIELD" button.
3. Push the fan speed control button on the right side to obtain a maximum air flow.
4. Leave the air conditioning on-off button off.

For further information for removing frost and fog, see "Lower vent" on page 144.

AIR CONDITIONING

When the "FRONT WINDSHIELD" button is pushed while operating in automatic mode, the air conditioning is set to operate and the OUTSIDE AIR mode is set.

If you push the "FRONT WINDSHIELD" button once again while in the FRONT WINDSHIELD mode, the mode then returns to the last mode used.



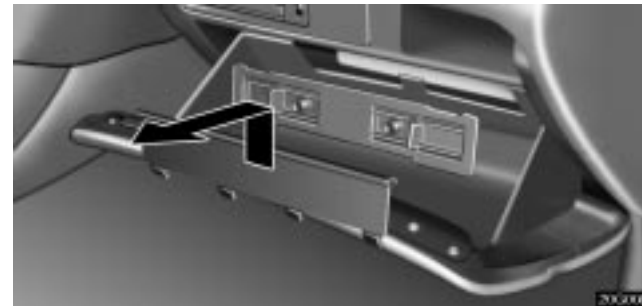
CAUTION

Do not use the "FRONT WINDSHIELD" button during cooled air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield could cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up blocking your vision.

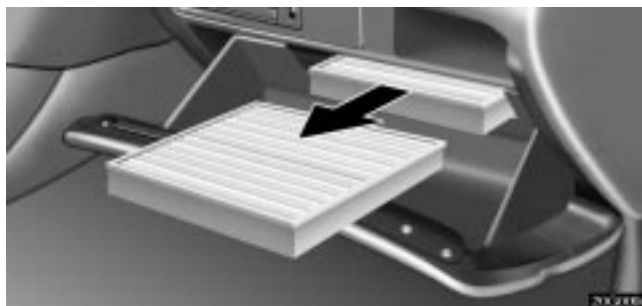
(c) Air filter

The air filter may clog after long use and reduce air flow. You can inspect the filter easily.

When you inspect and replace the air filter, be sure to turn off the fan.



1. Open the glove box and remove the two covers.



2. Take out the air filter.

If it is dirty, it should be replaced. To maintain the air conditioning efficiency, replace the air filter according to the maintenance schedule. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Owner's Manual Supplement / Maintenance Schedule".)

NOTICE

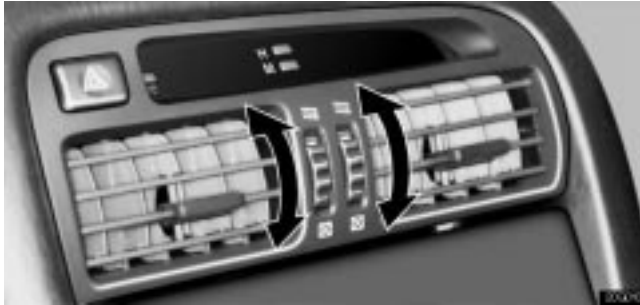
Do not drive with the air filter removed, or the efficiency of air conditioning may be lost.

(d) Operating tips

- Make sure the air inlet grilles in front of the windshield are not blocked by leaves or other obstructions.
- If air flow control is not satisfactory, check the dashboard vents. (See "Center vents", "Side vents", "Lower vent" and "Rear vents".)
- To help cool down the interior after parking in the hot sun, drive for the first few minutes with the windows open. After the excess heat has blown away, close the windows.
- When driving on dusty roads, close all windows. If dust thrown up by the vehicle is still drawn into the vehicle after closing the windows, it is recommended that the air intake control button be left to the OUTSIDE AIR mode and the fan speed control button be pressed to anywhere except the "OFF" button.
- If following another vehicle on a dusty road, or driving in windy and dusty conditions, it is recommended that the air intake control button be temporarily pressed in to the RECIRCULATED AIR mode, which will close off the outside passage and prevent outside air and dust from entering the vehicle interior.

AIR CONDITIONING

Center vents



The center vents may be opened or closed as shown.

Side vents



The side vents may be opened or closed as shown.

Lower vent



The lower vent may be opened or closed as shown.

For removing frost or fog, it is recommended to close the lower vent when you push the “FRONT WINDSHIELD” button or use the “Floor” or the “Floor/Windshield” mode.

Rear vents



The rear vents may be opened or closed as shown.

SECTION 2 - 2

AIR CONDITIONING AND AUDIO

Audio

Audio system	148

***For vehicles equipped with Navigation System,
please refer to the separate "Owner's Manual for
Navigation System".***

AUDIO

AUDIO SYSTEM

Quick reference for your audio system



- You can adjust the brightness of the display. See “Instrument panel light control” on page 50 for details.
- The “DISC” button works only when your Lexus is equipped with an automatic changer.
- For the Mark Levinson brand audio system, “Mark Levinson” logo is provided on the panel.

1 Turning the system on and adjusting volume
(See page 150 for details.)

2 Stopping and ejecting a cassette tape
(See page 158 for details.)

3 Function buttons

1 – 6: Station selector buttons
(See page 154 for details.)

SCAN: Scan tuning
(See page 155 for details.)

MSG: Message button
(See page 157 for details.)

4 Display of functions in TAPE mode

◀▶: Side change
(See page 159 for details.)

□□: DOLBY NR
(See page 159 for details.)

◀◀: Rewinding
(See page 159 for details.)

▶▶: Fast forwarding
(See page 159 for details.)

RPT: Automatic repeat
(See page 160 for details.)

SKIP: Automatic skip of blank portions of tape
(See page 160 for details.)

4 Display of functions in CD mode

v ▲: Disc selection
(See page 164 for details.)

◀◀: Reversing
(See page 165 for details.)

▶▶: Fast forwarding
(See page 165 for details.)

RPT: Automatic repeat
(See page 165 for details.)

RAND: Random access
(See page 165 for details.)

SCAN: Track and disc scan selection
(See page 164 for details.)

5 AUDIO-TUNE knob
(See page 151 for details.)

**6 Radio data system/Traffic announcement/
Program type**
(See page 155, 156 and 157 for details.)

7 Cassette tape slot
(See page 158 for details.)

8 Mode selectors
(See page 150 for details.)

9 Radio mode: Seek tuning
(See page 154 for details.)

TAPE mode: Direct access to a desired program
(See page 160 for details.)

CD mode: Direct access to a desired program
(See page 165 for details.)

AUDIO

Using your audio system: some basics

This section describes some of the basic features of the Lexus audio system. Some information may not pertain to your system.

Your audio system works when the ignition key is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

NOTICE

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the car audio on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

(a) Turning the system on and off



Push this knob to turn the audio system on and off. Turn this knob to adjust the volume.

The system turns on in the last mode used.



Push "AM", "FM", "TAPE" or "DISC" to turn on that mode. The selected mode turns on directly.

Push these buttons if you want to switch from one mode to another.

If the tape or disc is not set, the cassette player or compact disc player does not turn on.

You can turn off the cassette player by ejecting the cassette tape. If the audio system was previously off, then the entire audio system will be turned off when you eject the cassette tape. If another function was previously playing, it will come on again.



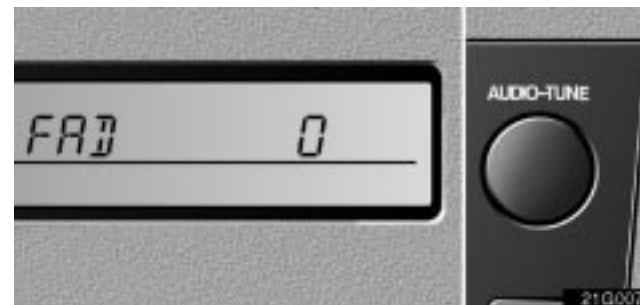
In the "TAPE" or "CD" mode, the applicable functions are shown in the lowest part of the display. Push the switch just below to turn on each function.

(b) Tone and balance

How good an audio program sounds to you is largely determined by the mix of the treble, mid-range, and bass levels. In fact, different kinds of music and vocal programs usually sound better with different mixes of treble, mid-range, and bass.

A good balance of the left and right stereo channels and of the front and rear sound levels is also important.

Keep in mind that if you are listening to a stereo recording or broadcast, changing the right/left balance will increase the volume of one group of sounds while decreasing the volume of another.



Each time you push the "AUDIO-TUNE" knob, the display changes as in the following. To adjust the tone and balance or turn on or off the automatic sound levelizer, turn the knob.

BAS: Adjusts low-pitched tones.

MID: Adjusts mid-pitched tones.

TRE: Adjusts high-pitched tones.

BAL: Adjusts the sound balance between the right and left speakers.

FAD: Adjusts the sound balance between the front and rear speakers.

ASL: Turns on or off the automatic sound levelizer.

Automatic sound levelizer: When the audio sound becomes difficult to be heard due to road noise, wind noise, etc. during driving, the system adjusts to the optimum volume and tone quality according to the noise level. While the automatic sound levelizer is on, "ASL" appears on the display.

AUDIO

(c) Your radio antenna

The wire antenna is mounted inside the rear window.

NOTICE

- *When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to scratch or damage the wire antenna.*
- *Putting a window tint (especially, conductive or metallic type) on the rear window may affect the reception of radio or mobile telephone. For the installation of the window tint, consult with your Lexus dealer.*

(d) Your cassette player

When you insert a cassette, the exposed tape should be to the right.

NOTICE

Do not oil any part of the cassette player, and do not insert anything except a cassette tape into the slot.

(e) Your automatic changer



If your Lexus is equipped with an automatic changer, it can play selected discs or continuously play all the discs set in the magazine.

When you set discs into the magazine, make sure they face the correct way. If not, the player will display "ERROR" and the disc number.

NOTICE

Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the compact disc player. Do not insert anything except a compact disc into the magazine.

The player is intended for use with 12 cm (4.7 in.) discs only.

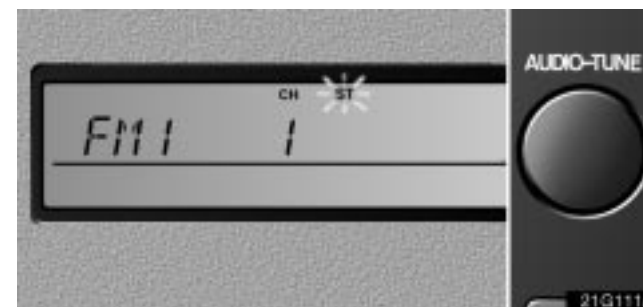
Radio operation

(a) Listening to the radio



Push these buttons to choose either an AM or FM station.

"AM", "FM1", "FM2" or "FM TYPE" appear on the display.



Turn this knob to the right to step up the station band or to the left to step down.

Your radio automatically changes to stereo reception when a stereo broadcast is received. "ST" appears on the display. If the signal becomes weak, the radio reduces the amount of channel separation to prevent the weak signal from creating noise. If the signal becomes extremely weak, the radio switches from stereo to mono reception. In this case, "ST" disappears from the display.

AUDIO

(b) Presetting a station



1. Tune in the desired station.

2. Push one of the station selector buttons (1–6) and hold it until a beep is heard. This sets the station to the button and the button number (1–6) appears on the display.

Each button can store one AM station and two FM stations. To change the preset station to a different one, follow the same procedure.

The preset station memory is cancelled when the power source is interrupted by battery disconnection or a blown fuse.

(c) Selecting a station

Your Lexus has an electronic tuning radio (ETR). Tune in the desired station using one of the following methods.



Preset tuning: Push the button (1–6) for the station you want. The button number (1–6) and station frequency appear on the display.

Manual tuning: Turn the "AUDIO-TUNE" knob. The radio will step up or down to another frequency.

Seek tuning: Push the "SEEK" button. The radio will begin seeking up or down for a station of the nearest frequency and will stop on reception. Each time you push the button, the stations will be searched out one after another.



To scan all the frequencies: Push the "SCAN" button. "SCAN" appears on the display. The radio will find the next station up the band, stay there for a few seconds, and then scan again. To select a station, push the "SCAN" button a second time.

To scan the preset stations: Push the "SCAN" button until you hear a beep. "P.SCAN" appears on the display. The radio will tune in the next preset station up the band, stay there for a few seconds, and then move to the next preset station. To select a station, push the "SCAN" button a second time.

(d) RDS (Radio Data System)

AF (Alternative Frequency) function: When the RDS is turned on, a station providing good reception is automatically selected if current reception worsens.



When you push the "RDS" button briefly during FM reception, the RDS turns on. "RDS" and "RDS SEARCH" appear on the display and the radio starts to search RDS stations.

If any RDS stations cannot be found, "NOTHING" appears and the previous mode returns.

If RDS stations are found, "FOUND **ST" appears on the display (** indicating the number of stations which are found) in the FM TYPE mode and the RDS stations are preset by program type.

To turn off the RDS, push the "RDS" button until you hear a beep.

AUDIO

TYPE (Program type):

When you push the "TYPE" button while receiving an RDS station, the current program type appears on the display.

Each time you push the "TYPE", the program type changes as in the following:

- ROCK
- EASY LIS (Easy listening)
- CLS/JAZZ (Classical music and Jazz)
- R&B (Rhythm and Blues)
- INFORM (Information)
- RELIGION
- MISC
- ALERT (Emergency message)

Emergency broadcast:



If an emergency broadcast is received during reception of other than AM broadcasting, you will hear a beep and "ALERT" appears on the display. Then an emergency broadcast will start. The volume of the emergency program is the same as TA volume level.

TRAF (Traffic) function: A station that regularly broadcasts traffic information is automatically sought and broadcasts when the program starts.

When you push the "TRAF" button, "TRAF SEEK" appears on the display and the radio will start seeking any traffic program station.

If any traffic program station is not found, "NO TRAF INFO" appears on the display for a few seconds and the previous mode returns. However, if the "TRAF" button is pushed in the "TAPE" or "CD" mode, the radio will start seeking traffic program station again after 20 seconds.

If the traffic program station is found, the name for traffic program station is displayed for a while until traffic announcement is received. On reception of traffic announcement, you will hear a beep and "TRAF ANNOUNCE" appears on the display for a few seconds.

After the traffic announcement program is over, one beep sounds and the previous mode returns.

TA volume level: The volume of the traffic information program can be adjusted independently by turning the "POWER VOL" knob while a traffic program station is received.

Radio text message:



If the radio receives a radio text message during FM reception, "MSG" and a text message appears on the display. After the text message goes off, "MSG" also goes off.

After the text message goes off from the display, pushing the "MSG" button during receiving the message shows the text message again on the display.

The RDS audio system has memory to store three messages consisting of 64 characters. To store a message in memory, push the "MSG" button until you hear a beep.

If three messages are already stored in memory, the oldest message will be overwritten by the new message.

AUDIO

To recall a radio text message, push the "MSG" button. Each time you push the button, the message will be displayed from the new one.

If there is no radio text message in memory and when no message is received, "NO MSG STORED" appears on the display. Then the previous mode returns.

Cassette tape player operation

(a) Playing a cassette tape



When you insert a cassette tape, the exposed tape should be to the right.

The player will automatically start when you insert a cassette tape. At this time, "TAPE" appears on the display.

If a metal or chrome equivalent cassette tape is put in the cassette player, the player will automatically adapt to it and "METAL" appears on the display.

To stop or eject the cassette tape, push the "EJECT" button.

Auto-reverse feature: After the cassette player reaches the end of a tape, it automatically reverses and begins to play the other side, regardless of whether the cassette was playing or fast forwarding.



If a cassette is already in the slot, push the "TAPE" button.

Dolby® Noise Reduction* feature: If you are listening to a tape that was recorded with Dolby® Noise Reduction, push the button by the double-D symbol. The display will indicate that the Dolby noise reduction system is on.

The Dolby NR mode reduces tape noise by about 10 dB. For best sound reproduction, play your tapes with the Dolby NR on or off according to the mode used for recording the tape.

To play a tape recorded without Dolby NR, push the button again to turn off the Dolby NR.

* Dolby noise reduction manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. "DOLBY" and the double-D symbol  are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

(b) Manual program selection



"Program" button: Push the "" button to select the other side of a cassette tape. The display indicates which side is currently selected ( indicates top side,  indicates bottom side).

"Rewind" button: Push the "" button to rewind a tape. "REW" appears on the display.

To stop rewinding, push the same button or "TAPE" button.

"Fast forward" button: Push the "" button to fast forward a cassette tape. "FF" appears on the display.

To stop fast forwarding, push the same button or "TAPE" button.

AUDIO

(c) Automatic program selection



"RPT" button: The repeat feature automatically replays the current program.

Push the "RPT" button while the program is playing. When the program ends, it will automatically be rewound and replayed. Push the button again to turn off the repeat feature.

There must be at least 4 seconds of blank space between programs for the repeat feature to work correctly.

"SKIP" button: The skip feature allows you to fast forward past long stretches of blank tape. This is especially useful at the end of cassettes.

Push the "SKIP" button. The player will automatically skip any blank portions of 15 seconds or more and play the next program. To cancel it, push the button once again.



"Automatic program selection" button: The automatic program selection feature allows you to program your cassette player to skip forward or backward to locate the song you want to hear. You can skip up to 9 programs at a time.

Push this button on the upper side to skip forward. "FF" and the number will appear on the display. Push the button until the number you want to skip appears on the display. After that, the player will automatically skip forward.

When the end of the tape is reached, the player automatically reverses sides and resumes normal play.

Push this button on the lower side to skip backward. Push the button until "REW" and the number you want to skip appear on the display.

- If you set "REW 1", the player will rewind to the beginning of the current program.
- When counting the number of programs you want to rewind, remember to count the current program as well. For example, if you want to rewind to a song that is two before the song you are listening to, push this button until "REW 3" appears on the display.

When the beginning of the tape is reached, the player automatically resumes normal play.

There must be at least 3 seconds of blank space between programs for this feature to work correctly.

"RPT", "SKIP" or "Automatic program selection" features: These features may not work well with some spoken word, live or classical recordings.

Compact disc player operation

The compact disc player is an optional accessory that your vehicle is pre-wired to accept. Although your audio system has a CD button, your vehicle may or may not be equipped with a CD player. Please contact your dealer for additional details if you would like to have the optional CD player installed.

(a) Inserting compact discs

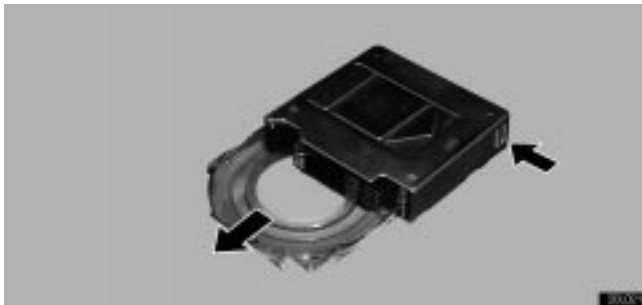


1. Pull the lever and open the glove box door.

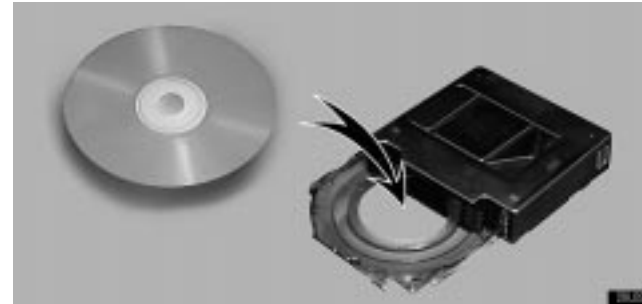
AUDIO



2. Push this button to eject the magazine.

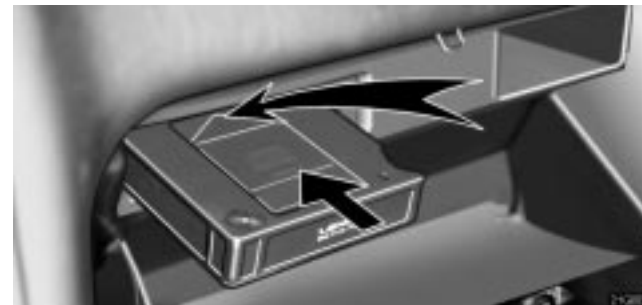


3. Pull out the tray while pushing the lock release button.



4. Put a disc on the tray with its label face down and push the tray back into the magazine.

If the label faces up, the disc cannot be played. In this case, "ERROR" and the disc number appears on the display.



5. Insert the magazine into the player as indicated by the arrow head on the magazine and close the glove box door.

When the magazine is set completely, the system will be in a "Load" cycle for approximately 10 seconds while the system searches for discs in the magazine. Upon completion of this cycle, the CD unit will be ready to play. If the "DISC" button is pushed during the "Load" cycle, "LOAD" appears on the display until the system has completed the load cycle, after which the system will begin normal play.

CAUTION

To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed while driving.

(b) Playing a compact disc



Push the "DISC" button if the magazine is already loaded in the player.

"CD" appears on the display.

The discs set in the magazine are played continuously, starting with disc number 1. The disc number of the disc currently being played, the track number and the time from the beginning of the program appear on the display.

When play of one disc ends, the first track of the following disc starts. When play of the final disc ends, play of the first disc starts again.

The player will skip any empty disc trays.

AUDIO

(c) Selecting a desired disc



Searching for a desired disc:

Push the "V" or "A" button to select the disc number.

Push the button several times until the desired disc number appears on the display. When you release the button, the player will start playing the selected disc from the first track.

(d) Searching for a desired track or disc



Searching for a desired track:

Push the "SCAN" button briefly. "SCAN" will appear on the display. The compact disc player will play the next track for 10 seconds, then scan again. To select a track, push the "SCAN" button a second time. If the player reaches the end of the disc, it will continue scanning at track 1.

After all the tracks or discs in the magazine are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

Searching for a desired disc:

Push the "SCAN" button until you hear a beep. With "D.SCAN" on the display, the program at the beginning of each disc will be played for 10 seconds. To continue listening to the program of your choice, push the button a second time.

After all the discs in the magazine are scanned in one pass, the scan function is cancelled.

(e) Selecting a desired track

"TRACK" button: Use for direct access to a desired track.

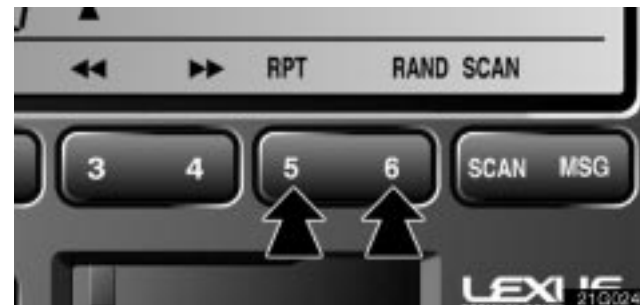
Push either side of the "TRACK" button several times until the desired track number appears on the display. As you release the button, the player will start playing the selected track from the beginning.

"Fast forward" button.

Push the "▶▶" button and hold it to fast forward the disc. When you release the button, the compact disc player will resume playing from that position.

"Reverse" button.

Push the "◀◀" button and hold it to reverse the disc. When you release the button, the compact disc player will resume playing.

(f) Other compact disc player functions

"RPT" button: Use it for automatic repeat of the track or disc you are currently listening to.

Push the button briefly while the track is playing. "RPT" appears on the display. When the track is finished, the player will automatically go back to the beginning of the track and play the track again. To cancel it, push the button once again.

Push the button until you hear a beep. "D.RPT" appears on the display. When the disc is finished, the player will automatically go back to the first track of the disc and play again.

To cancel it, push the button once again.

"RAND" button: Use it for automatic track or disc selection and play by the system.

When the button is pushed briefly, "RAND" appears on the display. The system selects a track in the discs which are set and plays it. To cancel it, push the button once again.

AUDIO

When the button is pushed until you hear a beep, "D.RAND" appears on the display. The system selects a track and discs in the magazine which are set and plays it. To cancel it, push the button once again.

When a track is skipped or the system is inoperative, push the button to reset.

(g) If the player malfunctions

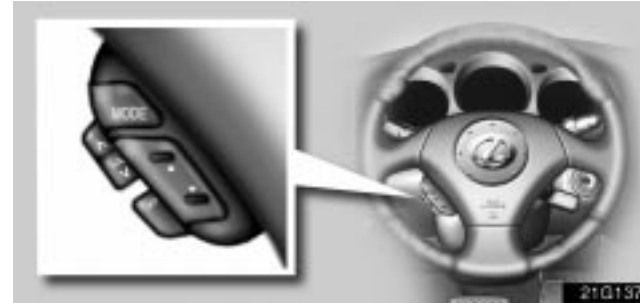
If "WAIT" appears on the display, audio signals of the disc cannot be read or the system has trouble. Push the "DISC" button once again.

If the player does not operate, check that the disc surface is not soiled or damaged. If the disc is O.K., the following two causes are possible.

- Condensation may have occurred on the internal mechanism of the automatic changer. Open the cover to let the air circulate.
- The temperature of the player's internal mechanism is raised because of high external temperature. Remove the magazine from the player to cool it.

If the player still does not operate, take it to your Lexus dealer.

Steering pad switches (GS430 only)



The steering pad switches are installed on the left side of the steering wheel.

"MODE" switch: Push the "MODE" switch to select an audio mode. Each push changes the mode sequentially if the desired mode is ready to use. When you push the switch with the audio system turned off, the audio system turns on.

"VOL" switches: Push "▲" to increase the volume and "▼" to decrease the volume. The volume continues to increase or decrease while the switch is being pressed.

"SET" switch: Push the "SET" switch to change to the preset volume. To preset the volume, adjust the volume and push the switch until you hear a beep.

“▼” or “▲” switch: The function in each mode is shown below.

(a) When the radio mode is selected

- Push this switch briefly to select a station that you preset on the switch of the audio system.
- Push this switch and hold it until you hear a beep. The radio will begin seeking up or down for a station and stop on reception.

(b) When the “TAPE” mode is selected

- Push this switch briefly for automatic program selection. In automatic program selection, you can skip up to 9 programs at a time. For details, see page 160 for details.
- Push this switch until you hear a beep to fast forward or rewind the tape. To stop fast forwarding or rewinding, push the same side on the switch.

(c) When the “CD” mode is selected

- Push this switch briefly to select a desired track.
- To select a desired disc, push and hold this switch until you hear a beep.



CAUTION

Operate the steering pad switches with due care while you are driving. Otherwise an accident may occur.

AUDIO

Car audio system operating hints

NOTICE

To ensure the correct audio system operation:

- *Be careful not to spill beverages over the audio system.*
- *Do not put anything other than a cassette tape or CD magazine into the cassette tape slot or CD changer.*
- *The use of cellular phone inside or near the vehicle may cause a noise from the speakers of the audio system which you are listening to. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.*

Radio reception

Usually, the problem with radio reception does not mean there is a problem with your radio – it is just the normal result of conditions outside the vehicle.

For example, nearby buildings and terrain can interfere with FM reception. Power lines or telephone wires can interfere with AM signals. And of course, radio signals have a limited range. The farther you are from a station, the weaker its signal will be. In addition, reception conditions change constantly as your vehicle moves.

Here are some common reception problems that probably do not indicate a problem with your radio:

FM

Fading and drifting stations – Generally, the effective range of FM is about 40 km (25 miles). Once outside this range, you may notice fading and drifting, which increase with the distance from the radio transmitter. They are often accompanied by distortion.

Multi-path – FM signals are reflective, making it possible for two signals to reach your antenna at the same time. If this happens, the signals will cancel each other out, causing a momentary flutter or loss of reception.

Static and fluttering – These occur when signals are blocked by buildings, trees, or other large objects. Increasing the bass level may reduce static and fluttering.

Station swapping – If the FM signal you are listening to is interrupted or weakened, and there is another strong station nearby on the FM band, your radio may tune in the second station until the original signal can be picked up again.

AM

Fading – AM broadcasts are reflected by the upper atmosphere – especially at night. These reflected signals can interfere with those received directly from the radio station, causing the radio station to sound alternately strong and weak.

Station interference – When a reflected signal and a signal received directly from a radio station are very nearly the same frequency, they can interfere with each other, making it difficult to hear the broadcast.

Static – AM is easily affected by external sources of electrical noise, such as high tension power lines, lightening, or electrical motors. This results in static.

Caring for your cassette player and tapes

For the best performance for your cassette player and tapes:

Clean the tape head and other parts regularly.

- A dirty tape head or tape path can decrease sound quality and tangle your cassette tapes. The easiest way to clean them is by using a cleaning tape. (A wet type is recommended.)

Use high-quality cassettes:

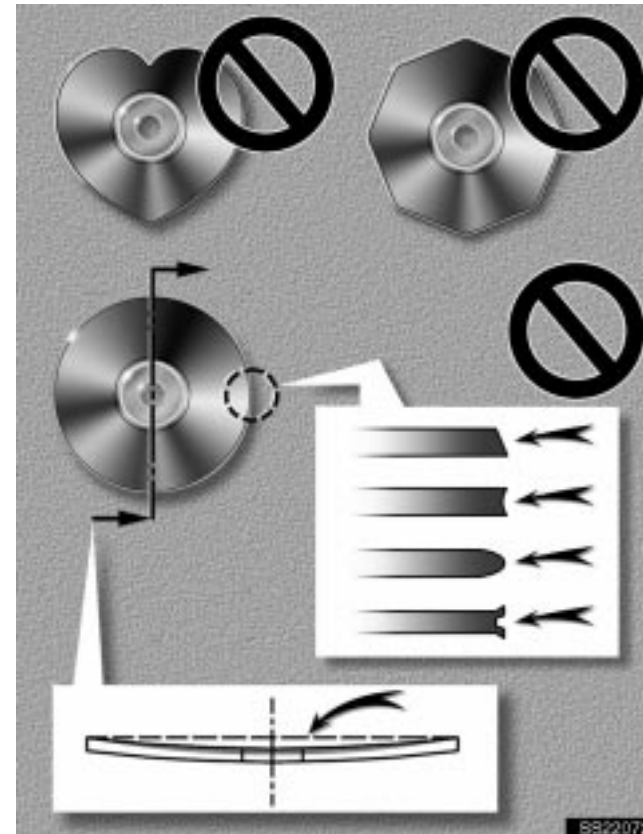
- Low-quality cassette tapes can cause many problems, including poor sound, inconsistent playing speed, and constant auto-reversing. They can also get stuck or tangled in the cassette player.
- Do not use a cassette if it has been damaged or tangled or if its label is peeling off.
- Do not leave a cassette in the player if you are not listening to it, especially if it is hot outside.
- Store cassettes in their cases and out of direct sunlight.
- Avoid using cassettes with a total playing time longer than 100 minutes (50 minutes per side). The tape used in these cassette is thin and could get stuck or tangled in the cassette player.

AUDIO

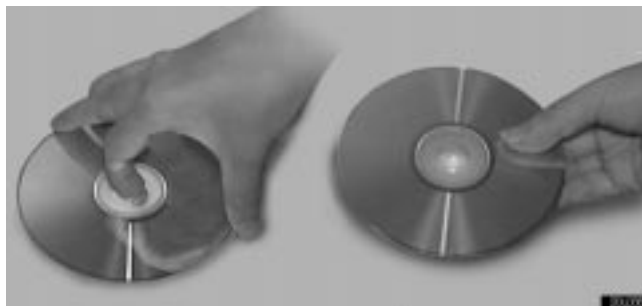
Caring for your compact disc player and discs



- Use only compact discs labeled as shown. CD-R (CD-Recordable), CD-RW (CD-Re-writable) and personal computer use CD-ROMs may not be playable on your compact disc player.
- Your compact disc player is intended for use with 12 cm (4.7 in.) discs only.
- Extremely high temperature can keep your compact disc player from working. On hot days, use air conditioning to cool the vehicle interior before you listen to a disc.
- Bumpy roads or other vibrations may make your compact disc player skip.
- If moisture gets into your compact disc player, you may not hear any sound even though your compact disc player appears to be working. Remove the magazine from the player and wait until it dries.



Your automatic changer cannot play special shaped or low-quality compact discs such as those shown here. Do not use them as the changer could be damaged.



► **Correct**

► **Wrong**

- Handle compact discs carefully, especially when you set them into the magazine. Hold them on the edge and do not bend them. Avoid getting fingerprints on them, particularly on the shiny side.
- Dirt, scrapes, warping, pin holes, or other disc damage could cause the player to skip or to repeat a section of a track. (To see a pin hole, hold the disc up to the light.)



To clean a compact disc: Wipe it with a soft, lint-free cloth that has been dampened with water. Wipe in a straight line from the center to the edge of the disc (not in a circle). Do not use a conventional record cleaner or anti-static device.



CAUTION

Compact disc players use an invisible laser beam which could cause hazardous radiation exposure if directed outside the unit. Be sure to operate the player correctly.

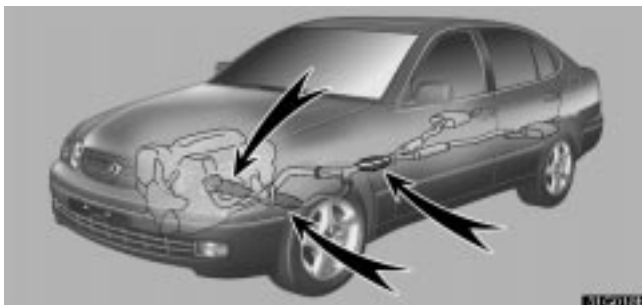
SECTION 3 – 1

STARTING AND DRIVING

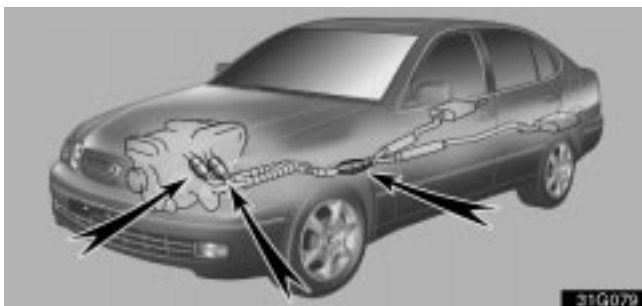
Starting and driving

Three-way catalytic converter	174
Engine exhaust caution	175
Before starting the engine	176
Ignition switch with steering lock	176
Parking brake	177
How to start the engine	178
Automatic transmission	179
Electronic throttle control system	188
Cruise control	189
Traction control system	192
Vehicle skid control system	193
Brake system	195
Brake pad wear limit indicators	199
Types of tires	199

THREE-WAY CATALYTIC CONVERTER



► GS430



► GS300

Three-way catalytic converters are emission control devices installed in the exhaust system.

It looks somewhat like a muffler, but its purpose is to reduce pollutants in the exhaust gas.

CAUTION

- Keep people and combustible materials away from the exhaust pipe while the engine is running. The exhaust gas is very hot.
- Do not drive, idle or park your vehicle over anything that might burn easily such as grass, leaves, paper or rags.

NOTICE

A large amount of unburned gases flowing into the three-way catalytic converter may cause it to overheat and create a fire hazard. To prevent this and other damage, observe the following precautions:

- Use only unleaded gasoline.
- Do not drive with an extremely low fuel level; running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, creating an excessive load on the three-way catalytic converter.
- Do not allow the engine to run at idle speed for more than 20 minutes.

- *Avoid racing the engine.*
- *Do not push-start or pull-start your vehicle.*
- *Do not turn off the ignition while the vehicle is moving.*
- *Keep your engine in good running order. Malfunctions in the engine electrical system, electronic ignition system or fuel system could cause an extremely high three-way catalytic converter temperature.*
- *If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, take your vehicle in for a check-up as soon as possible. Remember, your Lexus dealer knows your vehicle and its three-way catalytic converter system best.*
- *To ensure that the three-way catalytic converter and the entire emission control system operate properly, your vehicle must receive the periodic inspections required by the Lexus Maintenance Schedule. For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the "Owner's Manual Supplement / Maintenance Schedule".*

ENGINE EXHAUST CAUTION



CAUTION

- Avoid inhaling the engine exhaust. It contains carbon monoxide, which is a colorless and odorless gas. It can cause unconsciousness or even death.
- Make sure the exhaust system has no holes or loose connections. The system should be checked from time to time. If you hit something, or notice a change in the sound of the exhaust, have the system checked immediately.
- Do not run the engine in a garage or enclosed area except for the time needed to drive the vehicle in or out. The exhaust gases cannot escape, making this a particularly dangerous situation.
- Do not remain for a long time in a parked vehicle with the engine running. If it is unavoidable, however, do so only in an unconfined area and adjust the heating or cooling system to force outside air into the vehicle.
- Keep the trunk lid closed while driving. An open or unsealed trunk lid may cause exhaust gases to be drawn into the vehicle.

STARTING AND DRIVING

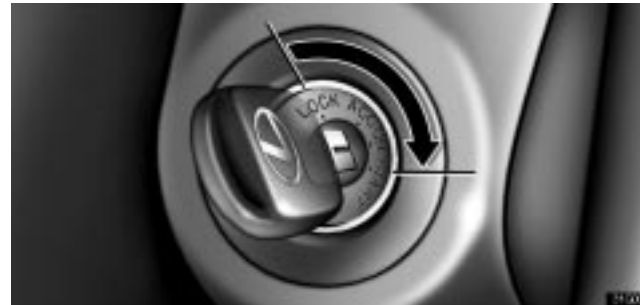
- To allow proper operation of your vehicle's ventilation system, keep the inlet grilles in front of the windshield clear of snow, leaves, or other obstructions.
- If you smell exhaust fumes in the vehicle, drive with the windows open and the trunk lid closed. Have the cause immediately located and corrected.

BEFORE STARTING THE ENGINE

1. Check the area around the vehicle before entering it.
2. Adjust seat position, seatback angle, head restraint height and steering wheel angle.
3. Adjust the inside and outside rear view mirrors.
4. Lock all doors.
5. Fasten seat belts.

Remember to check that the service reminder indicators function when turning the key to "ON", and check the fuel gauge to see that you have sufficient fuel.

IGNITION SWITCH WITH STEERING LOCK



"START" – Starter motor on. The key will return to the "ON" position when released.

For starting tips, see page 178.

"ON" – Engine on and all accessories on.

This is the normal driving position.

NOTICE

Do not leave the key in the "ON" position if the engine is not running. The battery will discharge and the electronic ignition system could be damaged.

"ACC" – Accessories such as the radio operate, but the engine is off.

If you leave the key in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position and open the driver's door, a buzzer will remind you to remove the key.*

*NOTE: *The volume or interval of beep sound can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*



"LOCK" – Engine is off and the steering wheel is locked. The ignition key can be removed only at this position.

To turn the key from "ACC" to the "LOCK" position, you must put the transmission selector lever in the "P" position.

Once you remove the key, the engine immobiliser system is automatically set. See "Engine immobiliser system" on page 11.

When starting the engine, the key may seem stuck at the "LOCK" position. To free it, first be sure the key is pushed all the way in, and then rock the steering wheel slightly while turning the key gently.

If, in an emergency, you must turn the engine off while the vehicle is moving, turn the key only to "ACC".

PARKING BRAKE



1 To set: Fully depress the parking brake pedal.

2 To release: Pull the parking brake release lever.

Before leaving your vehicle, firmly apply the parking brake.



CAUTION

Before driving, make sure the parking brake is fully released and that the parking brake reminder light is off.

STARTING AND DRIVING

HOW TO START THE ENGINE

Before cranking

1. Apply the parking brake firmly.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. Put the selector lever in "P". If you need to restart the engine while the vehicle is moving, put the selector lever in "N". A starter safety device will prevent the starter from operating if the selector lever is in any drive position.
4. Depress the brake pedal and hold it to the floor until driving off.

Starting the engine

Before starting the engine, be sure to follow the instructions in "Before cranking".

Normal starting procedure

The multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system in your engine automatically controls the proper air–fuel mixture for starting. You can start a cold or hot engine as follows:

1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, crank the engine by turning the key to "START". Release it when the engine starts.
2. After the engine runs for about 10 seconds, you are ready to drive.

If the weather is below freezing, let the engine warm up for a few minutes before driving. Do not leave the vehicle while the engine is warming up.

If the engine stalls ...

Simply restart it , using the correct procedure given in normal starting.

If the engine will not start

See "If your vehicle will not start" on page 208.

NOTICE

- ***Do not crank for more than 30 seconds at a time. This may overheat the starter and wiring systems.***
- ***Do not race a cold engine.***
- ***If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have the engine checked immediately.***

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Your automatic transmission has a shift lock system to minimize the possibility of incorrect operation. This means you can only shift out of "P" position when the brake pedal is depressed with the ignition switch in "ON" position. (★)



► *The shift position is displayed on the instrument cluster.*

GS430:

P: Parking, engine starting and key removal

R: Reverse

N: Neutral

D: Normal driving (with overdrive on)

4: Engine braking

When the cruise control is being used, even if you downshift from "D" to "4", engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. For the operation to decrease the vehicle speed, see page 191.

3, 2: Stronger engine braking

L: Maximum engine braking

STARTING AND DRIVING

GS300:

P: Parking, engine starting and key removal

R: Reverse

N: Neutral

D: Normal driving (with overdrive on)

M: Manual shifting up or downshifting

When the cruise control is being used, even if you downshift from "D" to "4", engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. For the operation to decrease the vehicle speed, see page 191.

3, 2: Stronger engine braking

L: Maximum engine braking

Correct use of the automatic transmission is explained in the following parts.

- (a) Normal driving
- (b) Driving in M mode (GS300 only)
- (c) Using engine braking
- (d) Using the "3", "2" and "L" positions
- (e) Backing up
- (f) Parking
- (g) Good driving practice
- (h) Rocking your vehicle if stuck
- (i) If you cannot shift the selector lever

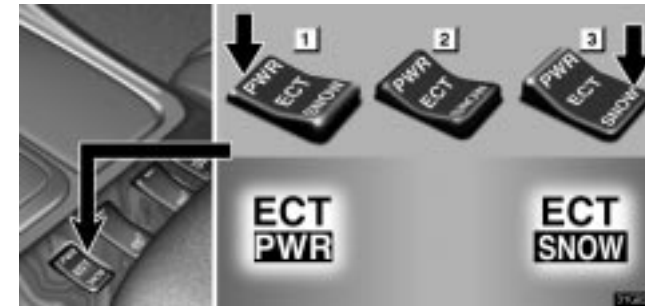
(a) Normal driving



► **1** "P" (Park) position **2** "N" (Neutral) position

1. Start the engine as instructed in "How to start the engine" on page 178.

The transmission must be in "P" or "N". The engine will not start in any drive position even if the ignition key is turned to "START".



► **1** Power position **2** Normal position
3 Snow position

2. Set the driving pattern selector switch to the "Normal" position.

Your transmission has a driving pattern selector switch which allows you to select "Power", "Normal" or "Snow" mode to suit your driving condition. For ordinary driving, Lexus recommends that you use the "Normal" position to improve fuel economy.

3. For more powerful acceleration and sporty driving, use the "Power" position.

In the "Power" position, the "ECT PWR" light in the instrument cluster is on and the transmission is shifted up at higher vehicle speeds and shifted down more responsively than in the "Normal" position.

For "Snow" mode, see "Electronic Throttle Control System" on page 188.

STARTING AND DRIVING



► **1** Brake pedal **2** "D" (Drive) position

4. With your foot holding down the brake pedal, shift the selector lever to "D".

Always use the "D" position to improve fuel economy and quiet driving. Only in this position, shifting into the overdrive gear is possible. However, while the engine coolant temperature is low, the transmission will not shift into the overdrive gear even in the "D" position. (See "(b) Using engine braking" and "(f) Good driving practice" for exceptions.)



CAUTION

Never put your foot on the accelerator pedal while shifting.

5. Release the parking brake and brake pedal. Depress the accelerator pedal slowly for smooth starting.

In normal cruising, the vehicle will start in first gear and automatically shift up to the most suitable gear. On inclines, declines or winding roads, etc., the vehicle shifts up and down automatically according to the running conditions to obtain the suitable driving power and engine braking.

When the lever is in "4" position, the automatic transmission system will select the most suitable gear for the running conditions such as hill climbing, hard towing, etc.

If you need to accelerate rapidly while driving, depress the accelerator pedal to the full throttle position. This provides more acceleration by automatically downshifting the transmission to the next lower gear or beyond, depending on the vehicle speed.

If engine braking is needed, such as in descending a long hill, see "(b) Using engine braking".

(b) Driving in M mode (GS300 only)



► **1** "M" position **2** Downshifting on the front, Upshifting on the rear

When the selector lever is put in the "M" position, the "M" indicator is shown on the instrument cluster. Pushing either of the switches on the front or rear of the steering wheel downshifts the transmission from "D" to "2" position or upshifts from "2" to "D" position.

The current gear position is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Each time you push the switch located on the front of the steering wheel, the transmission downshifts (from "D") to "4", "3" and then "2".

When you push the switch located on the back of the steering wheel, the transmission upshifts to "3", "4" and then "D".

For the precautions on each position, see the description on the previous page.

2 warning tones sound in any of the following cases:

- You attempt to downshift the transmission when it is not possible to downshift due to the high vehicle speed.
- You attempt to downshift from "2" position.
- You attempt to upshift from "D" position.

If the "M" indicator flashes, there is a problem somewhere in the system. In this case, it should be noted that you cannot downshift or upshift the transmission using the switches on the steering wheel. Consult with your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. The transmission works exactly in the same way as when you put the selector lever in the "D" position.



CAUTION

Be careful when downshifting on a slippery surface. The abrupt change in engine speed could cause the vehicle to spin or skid.

STARTING AND DRIVING

(c) Using engine braking



To use the braking power of the engine, downshift the transmission in the way described below:

- 1 Shift into the "4" position. The transmission will downshift to fourth gear and engine braking will be enabled.
When the cruise control is being used, even if you downshift from "D" to "4", engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. If you need to decrease the vehicle speed, see page 191.
- 2 Shift into the "3" position. The transmission will downshift to third gear when the vehicle speed is or becomes lower than the speed listed below and stronger engine braking will be enabled.

- 3 Shift into the "2" position. The transmission will downshift to second gear when the vehicle speed is or becomes lower than the speed listed below and more powerful engine braking than that of "3" position will be enabled.
- 4 Shift into the "L" position. The transmission will downshift to first gear when the vehicle speed is or becomes lower than the speed listed below and maximum engine braking will be enabled.

	GS430 km/h (mph)	GS300 km/h (mph)
"3"	153 (95)	128 (80)
"2"	100 (62)	85 (53)
"L"	39 (24)	16 (10)

 **CAUTION**

Be careful when downshifting on a slippery surface. The abrupt change in engine speed could cause the vehicle to spin or skid.

(d) Using the "3", "2" and "L" positions

The "3", "2" and "L" positions are used for strong engine braking as described previously.

With the selector lever in "3", "2" or "L", you can start the vehicle in motion as with the lever in "D".

With the selector lever in "3" or "2", the vehicle will start in first gear and automatically shift to third or second gear.

With the selector lever in "L", the transmission is engaged in first gear.

NOTICE

- **Be careful not to over-rev the engine. Watch the tachometer to keep engine rpm from going into the red zone. The approximate maximum allowable speed for each position is given below for your reference:**

	GS430 km/h (mph)	GS300 km/h (mph)
"3"	156 (97)	130 (81)
"2"	102 (63)	85 (53)
"L"	66 (41)	55 (34)

- **Do not continue hill climbing or hard towing for a long time in the "3", "2" or "L" position. This may cause severe automatic transmission damage from overheating. To prevent such damage, "4" position should be used in hill climbing or hard towing.**

(e) Backing up



- **1 Brake pedal 2 "R" (Reverse) position**

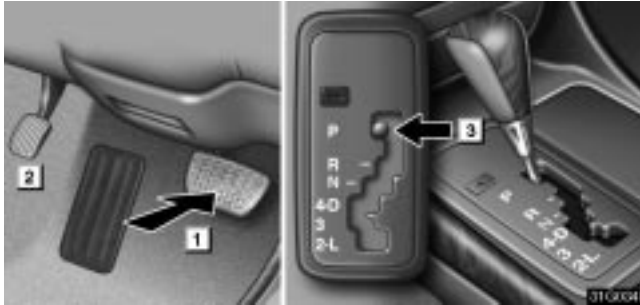
1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. With the brake pedal held down with your foot, shift the selector lever to the "R" position.

NOTICE

Never shift into reverse while the vehicle is moving.

STARTING AND DRIVING

(f) Parking



- **1** Brake pedal **2** Parking brake pedal
3 "P" (Park) position

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Depress the parking brake pedal fully.
3. With the brake pedal held down with your foot, shift the selector lever to the "P" position.

CAUTION

Never attempt to move the selector lever into "P" under any circumstances while the vehicle is moving. Serious mechanical damage and loss of vehicle control may result.

(g) Good driving practice

If the transmission repeatedly shifts up and down between the fourth and overdrive gears when climbing a gentle slope, shift the selector lever to the "4" position. Be sure to shift the selector lever to the "D" position after climbing the slope.

CAUTION

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

NOTICE

Do not hold the vehicle on an upgrade with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transmission to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.

(h) Rocking your vehicle if stuck

 CAUTION

If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes un-stuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

NOTICE

If you rock your vehicle, observe the following precautions to prevent damage to the transmission and other parts.

- *Do not depress the accelerator pedal while shifting the selector lever or before the transmission is completely shifted to forward or reverse gear.*
- *Do not race the engine and avoid spinning the wheels.*
- *If your vehicle remains stuck after rocking the vehicle several times, consider other ways such as towing.*

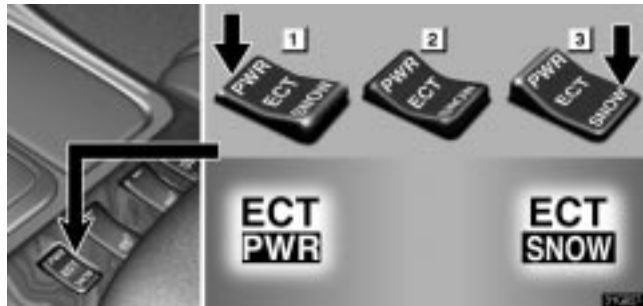
(i) If you cannot shift the selector

If you cannot shift the selector lever even though the brake pedal is depressed, use the shift lock override button. For instructions, see "If you cannot shift automatic transmission selector lever" on page 225.

STARTING AND DRIVING

ELECTRONIC THROTTLE CONTROL SYSTEM

The electronic throttle control system always maintains appropriate engine output in relation to the accelerator opening in all driving conditions.



- **1** Power position **2** Normal position
3 Snow position

The electronic throttle control system has 3 modes: Normal, Power and Snow modes.

Normal mode: For ordinary driving, Lexus recommends that you use the normal mode to improve fuel economy.

Power mode: For more powerful acceleration and sporty driving.

In the power mode, the "ECT PWR" light in the instrument cluster is on and the transmission is shifted up at higher vehicle speeds and shifted down more responsively than in the normal mode.

To return to the normal mode, push the driving pattern selector switch lightly on the "SNOW" side.

Snow mode: For slippery road surfaces such as in snow. In this mode, the spinning of the rear wheels is controlled appropriately.

When you push the driving pattern selector switch on the "SNOW" side, the snow mode is turned on and the "ECT SNOW" light in the instrument cluster comes on.

To return to the normal mode, push the driving pattern selector switch on the "SNOW" side again.

When you turn the ignition switch off in the snow mode, the mode automatically changes to the normal mode.

CRUISE CONTROL

The cruise control allows you to cruise the vehicle at a desired speed over 40 km/h (25 mph) with your foot off the accelerator pedal.

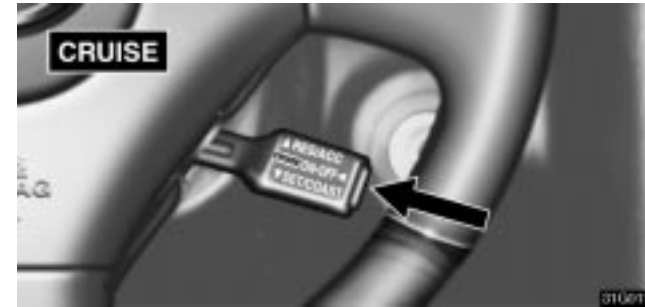
Your cruising speed can be maintained although a slight speed change may occur when driving up or down a gradient, within the limits of engine performance. On steeper hills, a great speed change will occur so it is better to drive without the cruise control.

When the cruise control is on, the driving pattern of the automatic transmission is fixed in the normal position, regardless of the position of the selector switch.

CAUTION

- To help maintain maximum control of your vehicle, do not use the cruise control when driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads.
- Avoid vehicle speed increases when driving downhill. If the vehicle speed is too fast in relation to the cruise control set speed, cancel the cruise control then downshift the transmission to use engine braking to slow down.

Turning on the system



To operate the cruise control, push the main switch. This turns the system on. The indicator light in the instrument cluster shows that you can now set your desired cruising speed. Another push on the switch will turn the system completely off.

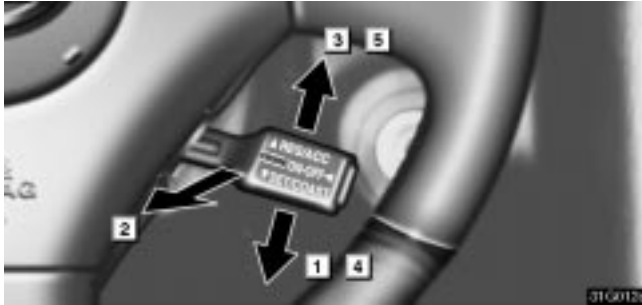
When the ignition key is turned off, the main switch is also automatically turned off. To use the cruise control again, push the main switch again to turn it on.

CAUTION

To avoid accidental cruise control engagement, keep the main switch off when not using the cruise control.

STARTING AND DRIVING

Setting operation



► Each function is described below.

1 Setting at a desired speed.

The transmission must be in "D" or "4" before you set the cruise control speed.

Bring the vehicle to the desired speed, press the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction and release it. This sets the vehicle at that speed. Now you may take your foot off the accelerator pedal. If you need acceleration – for example, when passing – depress the accelerator pedal enough for the vehicle to exceed the set speed. When you release the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will return to the speed set prior to the acceleration.

2 Cancelling the preset speed

You can cancel the preset speed by either of the following:

- Pulling the control lever in the "CANCEL" direction.
- Depressing the brake pedal.

If the vehicle speed falls below about 40 km/h (25 mph), the preset speed will be automatically cancelled.

If the vehicle speed drops 16 km/h (10 mph) below the preset speed, the preset speed will also automatically be cancelled.

If the preset speed automatically cancels out for other than these reasons, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer at the earliest opportunity.

3 Resetting to a faster speed

Press the control lever upward in the "RES/ACC" direction and hold it. Release the lever when the desired speed is attained. While the lever is held upward, the vehicle will gradually gain speed.

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph), the set speed can be increased 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time by pressing the control lever upward in the "RES/ACC" direction quickly within 0.6 seconds.

However, a quicker way to reset is to accelerate the vehicle and then press the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction.

4 Resetting to a slower speed

Press the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction and hold it. Release the lever when the desired speed is attained. While the lever is held downward, the vehicle speed will gradually decrease.

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph), the set speed can be lowered 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time by pressing the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction quickly within 0.6 seconds.

However, a quicker way to reset is to depress the brake pedal and then press the control lever downward in the "SET/COAST" direction.

Even if you downshift the transmission from the "D" position to "4" with the cruise control on, engine braking will not be applied because the cruise control is not cancelled. To decrease the vehicle speed, reset to a slower speed with the cruise control lever or depress the brake pedal. If you use the brake pedal, cruise control is cancelled.

5 Resuming the preset speed

If the preset speed is cancelled by pulling the control lever or by depressing the brake pedal, pushing the lever up in the "RES/ACC" direction will restore the speed set prior to cancellation. However, once the vehicle speed falls below about 40 km/h (25 mph), the preset speed will not be resumed.

Cruise control failure warning

If the "CRUISE" indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes five times and then goes out when using the cruise control, it means that there is trouble in the cruise control system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

STARTING AND DRIVING

TRACTION CONTROL SYSTEM

The traction control system automatically helps control the spinning of the rear wheels which may occur when accelerating on slippery road surfaces, thus assisting driver to control the driving power of the rear wheels.



► Slip indicator light

When you turn the ignition switch on, this system always turns on. Leave the system on during ordinary driving so that it can operate when needed. When traction control is applied, the slip indicator light blinks.

You may hear a sound in the engine compartment for a few seconds when the engine is started or just after the vehicle is started. This means that the traction control system is in the self-check mode, and does not indicate malfunction.

When the traction control system is operating, you may feel vibration of your vehicle, caused by operation of the brakes. This indicates the system is functioning properly.

When getting the vehicle out of mud or new snow, etc. the traction control system will help operate to prevent the wheels from spinning.

To turn off the traction control system, see page 193.

CAUTION

Under certain slippery road conditions, full traction of the vehicle and power to the rear wheels cannot be maintained, even though the traction control system is in operation. Do not drive the vehicle under any speed or maneuvering conditions which will cause the vehicle to lose traction. In situations where the road surface is covered with ice or snow, your vehicle should be fitted with snow tires or tire chains. Always drive at an appropriate and cautious pace.

VEHICLE SKID CONTROL SYSTEM

The vehicle skid control system helps provide comprehensive control of the systems such as an anti-lock brake system, traction control, engine control, etc. This system automatically controls the output of the brakes or engine to help prevent the vehicle from skidding when cornering on a slippery road surface or abrupt steering wheel operation occurs.



► Slip indicator light

If the vehicle is going to skid during driving, the slip indicator light flashes and an alarm sounds intermittently.

The vehicle skid control activates when the vehicle speed is about more than 15 km/h (9 mph).

You may hear a sound in the engine compartment for a few seconds when the engine is started or just after the vehicle is started. This means that the vehicle skid control is in the self-check mode and does not indicate a malfunction.



You can turn off the vehicle skid control system by pushing the "VSC OFF" switch. The "VSC OFF" indicator comes on. At this time, the traction control system also turns off. You cannot turn off either one of them. Pushing the "VSC OFF" switch a second time turns the system back on and extinguishes the "VSC OFF" indicator light.

When you turn the ignition switch on, this system always turns on.

STARTING AND DRIVING

Vehicle skid control system failure warning



These lights warn when there is a problem somewhere in the vehicle skid control system, traction control system or brake assist system.

If the "VSC" warning light and "VSC OFF" indicator light come on, have your vehicle checked by Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

The lights will come on when the ignition key is turned to "ON", and will go off after about a few seconds.

The lights may stay on for 60 seconds after the engine is started. It is normal if they go out after a while.

Depressing the brake pedal repeatedly may turn on the lights. It is normal if they go out after a few seconds.

If the "VSC" warning light and "VSC OFF" indicator light come on, the vehicle skid control system does not activate, however, it is no problem to continue your driving.

CAUTION

- Do not rely excessively on the vehicle skid control system. Even if the vehicle skid control system is operating, it is not that your vehicle is absolutely safe. Reckless driving will result in an unexpected accident. Always keep safety driving in mind. If the slip indicator light flashes, sounding an alarm, special care should be taken while driving.
- Only use tires of specified size. The size, manufacturer, brand and tread pattern for all 4 tires should be the same. If you use the tires other than specified, or different type or size, the vehicle skid control system may not function correctly. When replacing the tires or wheels, contact your Lexus dealer.

BRAKE SYSTEM

This brake system has 2 independent hydraulic circuits. If either circuit should fail, the other will still work. However, the pedal will be harder to press, and your stopping distance will be longer. Also, the brake system warning light may come on.

CAUTION

Do not drive your vehicle with only a single brake system. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

Brake booster

The brake booster uses brake fluid pressurized by the pump to power-assist the brakes. If the brake booster fails during driving, the brake system warning light comes on and buzzer sounds continuously. In this case, the brakes may not work properly. If they do not work well, depress the brake pedal firmly. If the brake system warning light comes on, immediately stop your vehicle and contact your Lexus dealer.

The brake system warning light may stay on for about 60 seconds after the engine is started. It is normal if the light turns off after a while.

Depressing the brake pedal repeatedly may turn on the brake system warning light and buzzer. It is normal if the light goes out and the buzzer stops sounding after a few seconds.

You may hear a small sound in the engine compartment after the engine is started or the brake pedal is depressed repeatedly. This is a pump pulsating sound of the brake system, and it is not a malfunction.

CAUTION

- **Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls. Each push on the pedal uses up your brake fluid pressure reserve.**
- **Even if the power assist is completely lost, the brakes will still work. But you will have to push the pedal hard, much harder than normal. And your braking distance will be longer.**

Anti-lock brake system

The anti-lock brake system is designed to automatically help prevent lock-up of the wheels during a sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces. This assists in providing directional stability and steering performance of the vehicle under these circumstances.

Effective way to press the ABS brake pedal: When the anti-lock brake system function is in action, you may feel the brake pedal pulsating and hear a noise. In this situation, to let the anti-lock brake system work for you, just hold the brake pedal down more firmly. Do not pump the brake in a panic stop. This will result in reduced braking performance.

STARTING AND DRIVING

The anti-lock brake system becomes operative after the vehicle has accelerated to a speed in excess of approximately 10 km/h (6 mph). It stops operating when the vehicle decelerates to a speed below approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

Depressing the brake pedal on slippery road surfaces such as on the manhole cover, the steel plate under the construction, joints in the bridge, etc. on a rainy day tends to activate the anti-lock brake system.

You may hear a click or motor sound in the engine compartment for a few seconds when the engine is started or just after the vehicle is started. This means that the anti-lock brake system is in the self-check mode, and does not indicate a malfunction.

When the anti-lock brake system is activated, the following conditions may occur. They do not indicate a malfunction of the system:

- You may hear the anti-lock brake system operating and feel the brake pedal pulsating and the vibrations of the vehicle body and steering wheel. You may also hear the motor sound in the engine compartment even after the vehicle is stopped.
- At the end of the anti-lock brake system activation, the brake pedal may move a little forward.

CAUTION

Do not overestimate the anti-lock brake system: Although the anti-lock brake system assists in providing vehicle control, it is still important to drive with all due care and maintain a moderate speed and safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, because there are limits to the vehicle stability and effectiveness of steering wheel operation even with the anti-lock brake system on.

If tires grip performance exceeds its capability, or if hydroplaning occurs during high speed driving in the rain, the anti-lock brake system does not provide vehicle control.

Anti-lock brake system is not designed to shorten the stopping distance: Always drive at the moderate speed and maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you. Compared with vehicles without an anti-lock brake system, your vehicle may require a longer stopping distance in the following cases:

- Driving on rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.
- Driving with tire chains installed.

- Driving over the steps such as the joints on the road.
- Driving on roads where the road surface is pitted or has other differences in surface height.

Install all 4 tires of specified size at appropriate pressure: The anti-lock brake system detects vehicle speeds using the speed sensors for respective wheels' turning speeds. The use of tires other than specified may fail to detect the accurate turning speed resulting in a longer stopping distance.

"ABS" warning light



The light comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. If the anti-lock brake system and the brake assist system work properly, the light turns off after a few seconds. Thereafter, if either of the systems malfunctions, the light comes on again.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system, the brake assist system, the traction control system and/or the vehicle skid control system do/does not operate, but the brake system still operates conventionally.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system does not operate so that the wheels could lock up during a sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces.

STARTING AND DRIVING

If either of the following conditions occur, this indicates a malfunction somewhere in the parts monitored by the warning light system. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.

- The light does not come on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, or remains on.
- The light comes on while you are driving.

A warning light turning on briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.



CAUTION

If the "ABS" warning light remains on together with the brake system warning light, immediately stop your vehicle at a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Either of the following conditions may occur, but do not indicate the malfunction:

- The light may stay on for about 60 seconds after the engine is started. It is normal if it turns off after a while.
- Depressing the brake pedal repeatedly may turn on the light. It is normal if it turns off after a few seconds.

Drum-in-disc type parking brake system

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drums are replaced.

Have your Lexus dealer perform the bedding-down.

Brake assist system

When you slam the brakes on, the brake assist system judges as an emergency stop and provides more powerful braking for a driver who cannot hold down the brake pedal firmly.

When you slam the brakes on, more powerful braking will be applied. At this time, you may hear a sound in the engine compartment and feel the vibrations of the brake pedal. This does not indicate a malfunction.

The brake assist system becomes operative after the vehicle has accelerated to a speed in excess of approximately 10 km/h (6 mph). It stops operating when the vehicle decelerates to a speed below approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

The brake assist system may not work for about 60 seconds after the engine is started.

For an explanation of this system's warning light, see "ABS" warning light on page 46 or 197 and "Vehicle skid control system failure warning" on page 194.

BRAKE PAD WEAR LIMIT INDICATORS



The brake pad wear limit indicators on your disc brakes give a warning noise when the brake pads are worn to the extent that replacement is required.

If you hear a squealing or scraping noise while driving, have the brake pads checked and replaced by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Expensive rotor damage can result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

TYPES OF TIRES

Determine what kind of tires your vehicle is originally equipped with.

1. Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed capability tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions.

Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

2. All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions, as well as for use all year round.

All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

STARTING AND DRIVING



CAUTION

- Do not mix summer and all season tires on your vehicle as this can cause dangerous handling characteristics, resulting in loss of control.
- Do not use tires other than the manufacturer's designated tires, and never mix tires or wheels of the sizes different from the originals.

SECTION 3 - 2

STARTING AND DRIVING

Driving tips

Break-in period	202
Operation in foreign countries	202
Tips for driving in various conditions	202
Winter driving tips	203
Dinghy towing	204
Trailer towing	205
How to save fuel and make your vehicle last longer	205

DRIVING TIPS

BREAK-IN PERIOD

Drive gently and avoid high speeds.

You need not follow a break-in schedule with your new Lexus. But following a few simple tips for the first 1600 km (1000 miles) can add to the future economy and long life of your vehicle:

- Do not drive over 88 km/h (55 mph).
- Avoid overrevving. Maintain engine speed between 2000 and 4000 rpm.
- Avoid full-throttle starts.
- Try to avoid hard stops during the first 300 km (200 miles).
- Do not drive for a long time at any single speed, either fast or slow.

OPERATION IN FOREIGN COUNTRIES

If you plan to drive your Lexus in another country ...

First, comply with the vehicle registration laws.

Second, confirm the availability of the correct fuel (unleaded and minimum octane rating).

TIPS FOR DRIVING IN VARIOUS CONDITIONS

- Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. This will allow you much better control.
- Drive slowly onto curbs and, if possible, at a right angle. Avoid driving onto high, sharp-edged objects and other road hazards. Failure to do so can lead to severe tire damage resulting in tire bursts.
- When parking on a hill, turn the front wheels until they touch the curb so that the vehicle will not roll. Apply the parking brake, and place the transmission in "P". If necessary, block the wheels.
- Washing your vehicle or driving through deep water may get the brakes wet. To see whether they are wet, check that there is no traffic near you and then press the pedal lightly. If you do not feel a normal braking force, the brakes are probably wet. To dry them, drive the vehicle cautiously while lightly pressing the brake pedal with the parking brake applied. If they still do not work safely, pull to the side of the road and call a Lexus dealer for assistance.

CAUTION

- Before driving off, make sure the parking brake is fully released and that the parking brake reminder light is off.
- Do not leave your vehicle unattended while the engine is running.

- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving. It can cause dangerous overheating, needless wear, and poor fuel economy.
- To drive down a long or steep hill, reduce your speed and downshift. Remember, if you ride the brakes excessively, they may overheat and not work properly. See page 184.
- Be careful when accelerating, upshifting, downshifting or braking on a slippery surface. The abrupt change in engine speed, such as sudden acceleration or engine braking, could cause the vehicle to spin or skid.
- Even if the legal speed limit permits it, do not drive over 140 km/h (85 mph) unless your vehicle has high-speed capability tires. Driving over 140 km/h (85 mph) may result in tire failure, loss of control and possible injury. Be sure to consult a tire dealer to determine whether the tires on your vehicle are high-speed capability tires or not before driving at such speeds.
- Do not continue normal driving when the brakes are wet. If they are wet, your vehicle will require a longer stopping distance, and it may pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Also, the parking brake will not hold the vehicle securely.

WINTER DRIVING TIPS

Make sure you have a proper freeze protection of engine coolant.

Your coolant must contain ethylene-glycol type coolant for a proper corrosion protection of aluminum components. Use "Toyota Long Life Coolant" or equivalent. See "Checking the engine coolant level" on page 255 for instructions.

NOTICE

Do not use alcohol type antifreeze or plain water alone.

When it is extremely cold, we recommend to use 60% solution for your Lexus, to provide protection down to about -50°C (-58°F). Do not use more than 70% solution for better coolant performance.

Check the condition of the battery and cables.

Cold temperatures reduce the capacity of any battery, so it must be in top shape to provide enough power for winter starting. Page 284 tells you how to visually inspect the battery. Your Lexus dealer and most service stations will be pleased to check the battery charge level.

Make sure the engine oil viscosity is suitable for the cold weather.

See page 254 for recommended viscosity. Leaving a heavy summer oil in your vehicle during winter months may cause harder starting. If you are not sure about which oil to use, call your Lexus dealer – they will be pleased to help.

DRIVING TIPS

Check the electronic ignition system for loose connections or obvious damage.

Keep the door locks from freezing.

Squirt lock de-icer or glycerine into the locks to keep them from freezing.

Use a washer fluid containing an antifreeze solution.

This product is available at your Lexus dealer and most auto parts stores. Follow the manufacturer's directions for how much to mix with water.

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or any other substitute because it may damage your vehicle's paint.

Do not use your parking brake when there is a possibility it could freeze.

When parking, put the transmission into "P" and block the front wheels. Do not use the parking brake, or snow or water accumulated in and around the parking brake mechanism may freeze the parking brake, making it hard to release.

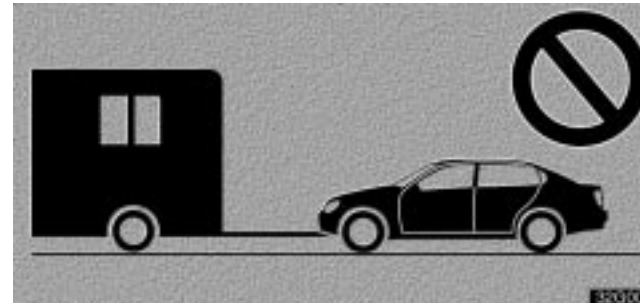
Keep ice and snow from accumulating under the fenders.

Ice and snow built up under your fenders can make steering difficult. During bad winter driving, stop and check under the fenders occasionally.

Depending on where you are driving, we recommend you carry some emergency equipment.

Some of the things you might put in the vehicle are tire chains, window scraper, bag of sand or salt, flares, small shovel, jumper cables, etc.

DINGHY TOWING

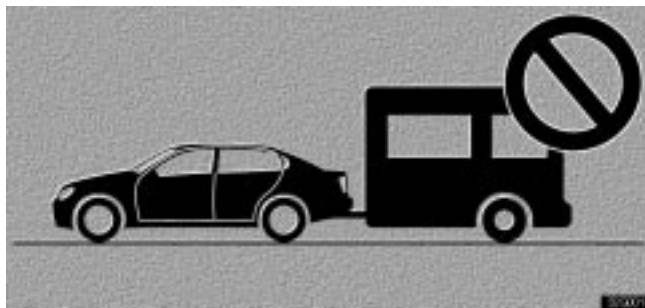


Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with four wheels on the ground) behind a motorhome.

NOTICE

Do not tow your vehicle with four wheels on the ground. This may cause serious damage to your vehicle.

TRAILER TOWING



Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. It is not designed for trailer towing.

HOW TO SAVE FUEL AND MAKE YOUR VEHICLE LAST LONGER

Getting more kilometer/mileage from a liter/gallon of fuel is easy – just take it easy. It will help make your vehicle last longer, too. Here are some specific tips on how to save money on both fuel and repairs:

- **Keep your tires inflated at the correct pressure.** Check the pressure every two weeks, or at least once a month. Underinflation causes tire wear and wastes fuel.
- **Do not carry unneeded weight in your vehicle.** Excess weight puts a heavier load on the engine, causing greater fuel consumption.
- **Avoid lengthy warm-up idling.** Once the engine is running smoothly, begin driving – but gently. Remember, however, that on cold winter days this may take a little longer.
- **Accelerate slowly and smoothly.** Avoid jackrabbit starts.
- **Avoid long engine idling.** If you have a long wait and you are not in traffic, it is better to turn off the engine and start again later.
- **Avoid engine over-revving.** Use a gear position suitable for the road on which you are traveling.
- **Avoid continuous speeding up and slowing down.** Stop-and-go driving wastes fuel.

DRIVING TIPS

- **Avoid unnecessary stopping and braking.** Maintain a steady pace. Try to time the traffic signals so you only need to stop as little as possible or take advantage of through streets to avoid traffic lights. Keep a proper distance from other vehicles to avoid sudden braking. This will also reduce wear on your brakes.
- **Avoid heavy traffic or traffic jams whenever possible.**
- **Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal.** This causes premature wear, overheating and poor fuel economy.
- **Maintain a moderate speed on highways.** The faster you drive, the greater the fuel consumption. By reducing your speed, you will cut down on fuel consumption.
- **Keep the front wheels in proper alignment.** Avoid hitting the curb and slow down on rough roads. Improper alignment not only causes faster tire wear but also puts an extra load on the engine, which, in turn, wastes fuel.
- **Keep the bottom of your vehicle free from mud, etc.** This not only lessens weight but also helps prevent corrosion.
- **Keep your vehicle tuned-up and in top shape.** A dirty air cleaner, improper valve clearance, dirty plugs, dirty oil and grease, brakes not adjusted, etc. all lower engine performance and contribute to poor fuel economy. For longer life of all parts and lower operating costs, keep all maintenance work on schedule, and if you often drive under severe conditions, see that your vehicle receives more frequent maintenance (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Owner's Manual Supplement / Maintenance Schedule".)



CAUTION

Never turn off the engine to coast down hills. Your power steering and brake booster will not function without the engine running. Also, the emission control system operates properly only when the engine is running.

SECTION 6 – 1

SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS

Introduction

Vehicle identification	236
Engine compartment overview (GS430)	237
Engine compartment overview (GS300)	238
Do-it-yourself service precautions	239
Positioning the jack	240
Parts and tools	241

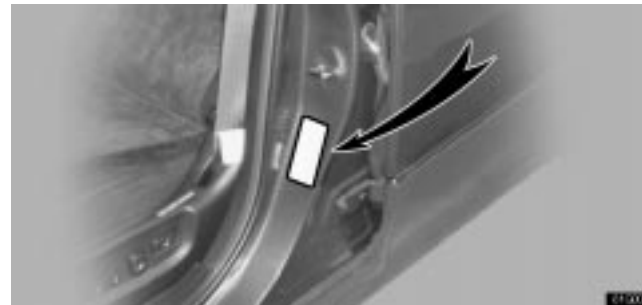
INTRODUCTION

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION

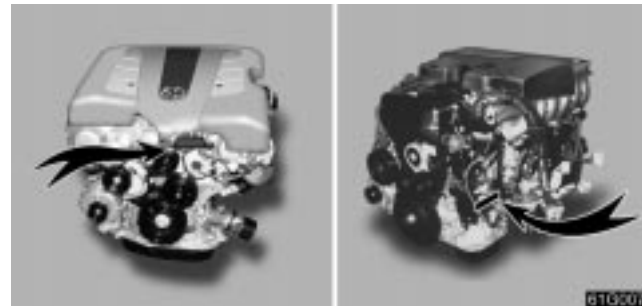


The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This number is on the left top of the instrument panel and can be seen through the windshield from outside.

This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.



The vehicle identification number (VIN) is also on the Certification Label.

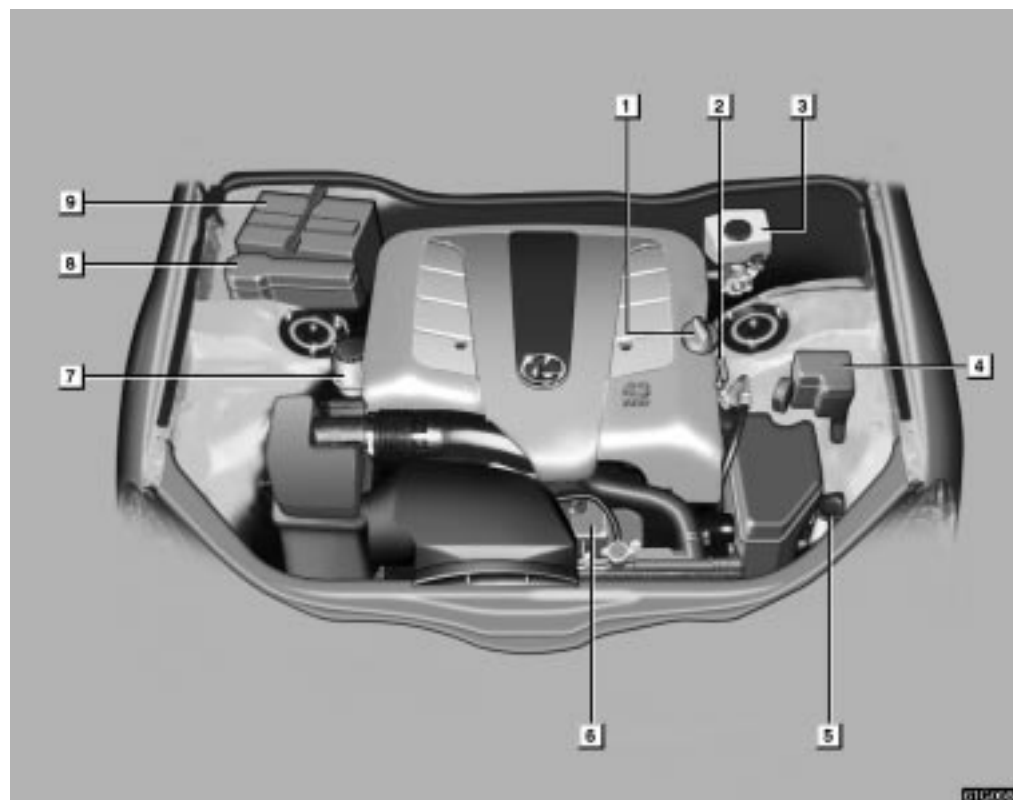


► **GS430**

► **GS300**

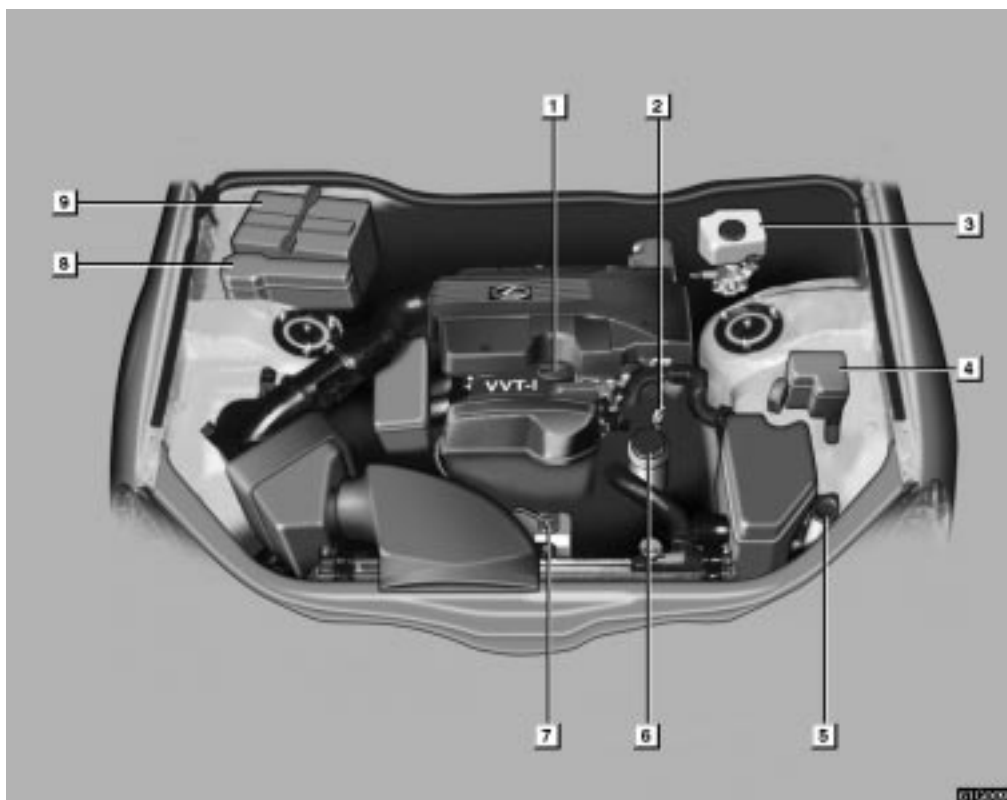
The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT OVERVIEW (GS430)



- 1** *Engine oil filler cap*
- 2** *Engine oil level dipstick*
- 3** *Brake fluid reservoir*
- 4** *Fuse box*
- 5** *Washer fluid tank*
- 6** *Engine coolant reservoir*
- 7** *Power steering fluid reservoir*
- 8** *Fuse box*
- 9** *Battery*

ENGINE COMPARTMENT OVERVIEW (GS300)



- 1** *Engine oil filler cap*
- 2** *Engine oil level dipstick*
- 3** *Brake fluid reservoir*
- 4** *Fuse box*
- 5** *Washer fluid tank*
- 6** *Power steering fluid reservoir*
- 7** *Engine coolant reservoir*
- 8** *Fuse box*
- 9** *Battery*

DO-IT-YOURSELF SERVICE PRECAUTIONS

If you perform maintenance yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure given in this Section.

You should be aware that improper or incomplete servicing may result in operating problems.

Performing do-it-yourself maintenance during the warranty period may affect your warranty coverage. Read the separate Lexus Warranty statement for details and suggestions.

This Section gives instructions only for those items that are relatively easy for an owner to perform. As explained in Section 5, there are still a number of items that must be performed by a qualified technician with special tools.

For information on tools and parts for do-it-yourself maintenance, see "Parts and tools" on page 241.

Utmost care should be taken when working on your vehicle to prevent accidental injury. Here are a few precautions that you should be especially careful to observe:



CAUTION

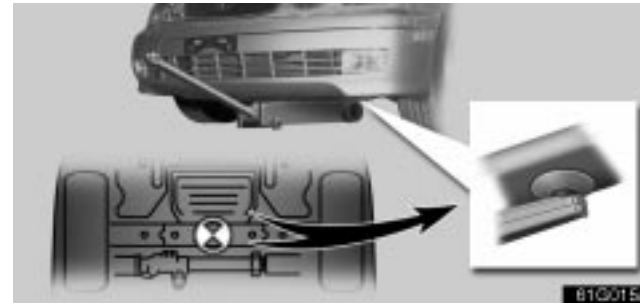
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt. (Removing rings, watches, and ties is advisable.)
- Right after driving, the engine compartment – the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and power steering fluid reservoir, etc. – will be hot. So be careful not to touch them. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or allow open flames around fuel or the battery. Their fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.
- Do not get under your vehicle with just the body jack supporting it. Always use automotive jack stands or other solid supports.
- Be sure the ignition is off if you work near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille. With the ignition on, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or if the coolant temperature is high.
- Use eye protection whenever you work on or under your vehicle where you may be exposed to flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc.

INTRODUCTION

NOTICE

- *Remember that battery and ignition cables carry high currents or voltages. Be careful of accidentally causing a short circuit.*
- *Before closing the engine hood, check to see that you have not forgotten any tools, rags, etc.*
- *Do not drive with the air cleaner removed, or excessive engine wear could result. Also backfiring could cause a fire in the engine compartment.*
- *Do not overfill automatic transmission fluid, or the transmission could be damaged.*
- *Be careful not to scratch the glass surface with the wiper frame.*

POSITIONING THE JACK



► Front



► Rear

When jacking up your vehicle with the jack, position the jack correctly as shown in the illustrations.

 CAUTION

When jacking, be sure to observe the following to reduce the possibility of personal injury:

- Follow jacking instructions.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle supported by the jack. Personal injury may occur.
- Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Stop the vehicle on a level firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and put the transmission in "P" (automatic).
- Make sure to set the jack properly in the jack point. Raising the vehicle with jack improperly positioned will damage the vehicle or may allow the vehicle to fall off the jack and cause personal injury.
- Never get under the vehicle when the vehicle is supported by the jack alone; use vehicle support stands.
- Do not raise the vehicle with someone in the vehicle
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.

NOTICE

Make sure to place the jack correctly, or your vehicle may be damaged.

PARTS AND TOOLS

Here is a list of parts and tools you will need to perform do-it-yourself maintenance. Remember all Lexus parts are designed in metric sizes, so your tools must be metric.

Checking the engine oil level

Parts (if level is low):

- Use API grade SJ, "Energy-Conserving" multigrade engine oil or ILSAC multigrade engine oil. For recommended oil viscosity, see page 254.

Tools:

- Rag or paper towel
- Funnel (only for adding oil)

Checking the engine coolant level

Parts (if level is low):

- "Toyota Long Life Coolant" or equivalent
See "Checking the engine coolant level" on page 255 for instructions.

- Demineralized or distilled water

Tools:

- Funnel (only for adding coolant)

INTRODUCTION

Checking brake fluid

Parts (if level is low):

- FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid

Tools:

- Funnel (only for adding fluid)

Checking power steering fluid

Parts (if level is low):

- Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III

Tools:

- Rag or paper towel
- Funnel (only for adding fluid)

Checking battery condition

Tools:

- Warm water
- Baking soda
- Grease
- Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)

Checking and replacing the blade type fuses

Parts (if replacement is necessary):

- Fuse with same amperage rating as original

Checking the cartridge type fuses

Parts (if replacement is necessary):

- Genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent with same amperage rating as original

Adding washer fluid

Parts:

- Water
- Washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use)

Tools:

- Funnel

SECTION 6 – 2

SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS

Engine

Specifications (GS430)	244
Specifications (GS300)	246
Fuel	248
Fuel pump shut off system	250
Facts about engine oil consumption	251
Used engine oil	252
Checking the engine oil level	253
Checking the engine coolant level	255
Spark plugs	257

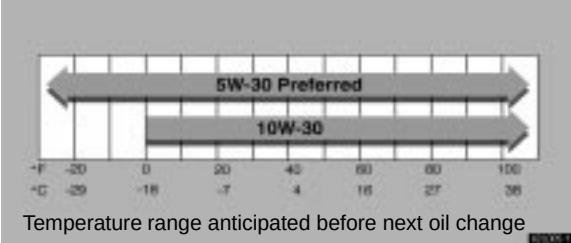
ENGINE

SPECIFICATIONS (GS430)

– GENERAL

Model	3UZ-FE
Type	8 cylinder V type, 4 cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	91.0 X 82.5 mm (3.58 X 3.25 in.)
Displacement	4293 cm ³ (261.9 cu.in.)
Valve clearance (engine cold)	
Intake	0.15 – 0.25 mm (0.006 – 0.010 in.)
Exhaust	0.25 – 0.35 mm (0.010 – 0.014 in.)
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

– LUBRICATION SYSTEM

Oil capacity	5.2 L (5.5 qt., 4.6 Imp.qt.) 4.9 L (5.2 qt., 4.3 Imp.qt.) API SJ, "Energy-Conserving" multigrade engine oil or ILSAC multigrade engine oil  The chart shows two horizontal bars representing temperature ranges. The top bar is labeled '5W-30 Preferred' and spans from -20°F to 100°F. The bottom bar is labeled '10W-30' and spans from -10°F to 100°F. Below the bars is a temperature scale in both Fahrenheit and Celsius. Temperature range anticipated before next oil change
Drain and refill	
with filter	
without filter	
Oil grade	
Recommended oil viscosity (SAE):	

ENGINE

– COOLING SYSTEM

Capacity Coolant type	9.0 L (9.5 qt., 7.9 Imp.qt.) "Toyota Long Life Coolant" or equivalent With ethylene–glycol type coolant for a proper corrosion protection of aluminum components Do not use alcohol type antifreeze or plain water alone.

– FUEL

Fuel type Octane rating	Only UNLEADED 91 (Research octane number 96) or higher

– IGNITION SYSTEM

Spark plug – Make DENSO NGK – Gap	SK20R11 IFR6A11 1.1 mm (0.043 in.)

– ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

Battery Open voltage at 20°C (68°F):	12.7V Fully charged 12.3V Half charged 11.9V Discharged [Voltage that is checked 20 minutes after the key is removed with all the lights turned off]
Charging rates	5A max.

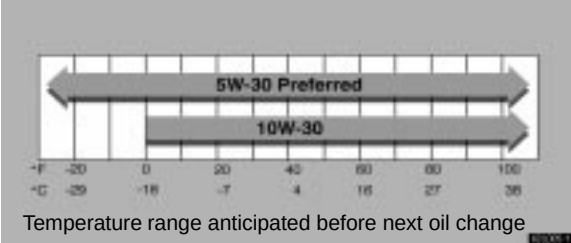
ENGINE

SPECIFICATIONS (GS300)

– GENERAL

Model	2JZ-GE
Type	6 cylinder in line, 4 cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	86.0 X 86.0 mm (3.39 X 3.39 in.)
Displacement	2997 cm ³ (182.9 cu.in.)
Valve clearance (engine cold)	
Intake	0.15 – 0.25 mm (0.006 – 0.010 in.)
Exhaust	0.25 – 0.35 mm (0.010 – 0.014 in.)
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

– LUBRICATION SYSTEM

Oil capacity	5.4 L (5.7 qt., 4.8 Imp.qt.) 5.1 L (5.4 qt., 4.5 Imp.qt.) API SJ, "Energy-Conserving" multigrade engine oil or ILSAC multigrade engine oil  The chart shows two horizontal bars representing temperature ranges. The top bar is labeled '5W-30 Preferred' and spans from -20°F to 100°F. The bottom bar is labeled '10W-30' and spans from -10°F to 100°F. Below the bars are two temperature scales: Fahrenheit (-20, 0, 20, 40, 60, 80, 100) and Celsius (-29, -18, -7, 4, 16, 27, 38).
Drain and refill	
with filter	
without filter	
Oil grade	
Recommended oil viscosity (SAE):	

ENGINE

– COOLING SYSTEM

Capacity Coolant type	7.7 L (8.1 qt., 6.8 Imp.qt.) "Toyota Long Life Coolant" or equivalent With ethylene–glycol type coolant for a proper corrosion protection of aluminum components Do not use alcohol type antifreeze or plain water alone.

– FUEL

Fuel type Octane rating	Only UNLEADED 91 (Research octane number 96) or higher

– IGNITION SYSTEM

Spark plug – Make DENSO – Gap	SK16R–P11 1.1 mm (0.043 in.)

– ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

Battery – Open voltage at 20°C (68°F): Charging rates	12.7V Fully charged 12.3V Half charged 11.9V Discharged [Voltage that is checked 20 minutes after the key is removed with all the lights turned off] 5A max.

ENGINE

FUEL

Fuel type

Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.

To help prevent gas station mixups, your Lexus has a smaller fuel tank opening. The special nozzle on pumps with unleaded fuel will fit it, but the larger standard nozzle on pumps with leaded gas will not.

At a minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A. and CGSB 3.5-M93 in Canada.

NOTICE

Do not use leaded gasoline. Use of leaded gasoline will cause the three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and the emission control system to function improperly. Also, this can increase maintenance costs.

Octane rating

Select premium unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher for optimum engine performance. However, if such premium type cannot be obtained, you may temporarily use unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating as low as 87 (Research Octane Number 91).

Use of unleaded fuel with an octane number or rating lower than stated above will cause persistent heavy knocking. If severe, this will lead to engine damage.

If your engine knocks ...

If you detect heavy knocking even when using the recommended fuel, or if you hear steady knocking while holding a steady speed on level roads, consult your Lexus dealer.

However, now and then, you may notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving up hills. This is no cause for concern.

Gasoline containing detergent additives

Lexus recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid build-up of engine deposits.

However, all gasoline sold in the U.S. contains detergent additives to keep clean and/or clean intake systems.

Quality gasoline

Automotive manufacturers in the U.S., Europe and Japan have developed a specification for quality fuel named World-Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) that is expected to be applied world wide. The WWFC consists of three categories that depend on required emission levels. In the U.S., category 3 has been adopted. The WWFC improves air quality by providing for better emissions in vehicle fleets, and customer satisfaction through better vehicle performance.

Cleaner burning gasoline

Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE is available in many areas.

Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions, and improve air quality.

Oxygenates in gasoline

Lexus allows the use of oxygenate blended gasoline where the oxygenate content is up to 10% ethanol or 15% MTBE. If you use gasohol in your Lexus, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.

Lexus does not recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

Sulfur in gasoline

If your vehicle is certified to California Emission Regulation, the vehicle is designed to operate on California cleaner burning gasoline (CBG) that contains lower sulfur. If you cannot use California CBG, your emission control system may suffer damage and turn on the Malfunction Indicator Lamp.

If the malfunction is caused by the type of fuel used, repairs may not be covered by your warranty.

Gasoline containing MMT

Some gasoline contain an octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).

Lexus does not recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected. The Malfunction Indicator Lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Lexus dealer for service.

Gasoline quality

In a very few cases, you may experience driveability problems caused by the particular gasoline that you are using. If you continue to have unacceptable driveability, try changing gasoline brands. If this does not rectify your problem, then consult your Lexus dealer.

ENGINE

NOTICE

- *Do not use gasohol other than stated above. It will cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.*
- *If drivability problems are encountered (poor hot starting, vaporizing, engine knock, etc.), discontinue its use.*
- *Take care not to spill gasohol during refueling. Gasohol may cause paint damage.*

Fuel tank capacity

75 L (19.8 gal., 16.5 imp.gal.)

FUEL PUMP SHUT OFF SYSTEM

The fuel pump shut off system stops supplying fuel to the engine to minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or an airbag inflates upon collision. To restart the engine after the fuel pump shut off system activates, turn the ignition switch to "ACC" or "LOCK" once and start it.

CAUTION

Inspect the ground under the vehicle before restarting the engine. If you find that liquid has leaked onto the ground, it is the fuel system that has been damaged and it is in need of repair. In this case, do not restart the engine.

FACTS ABOUT ENGINE OIL CONSUMPTION

Functions of engine oil

Engine oil has the primary function of lubricating and cooling the inside of the engine, and plays a major role in maintaining the engine in proper working order.

Engine oil consumption

It is normal that an engine should consume some engine oil during normal engine operation. The causes of oil consumption in a normal engine are as follows.

- Oil is used to lubricate pistons, piston rings and cylinders. A thin film of oil is left on the cylinder wall when a piston moves downwards in the cylinder. High negative pressure generated when the vehicle is decelerating sucks some of this oil into the combustion chamber. This oil as well as some part of the oil film left on the cylinder wall is burned by the high temperature combustion gases during the combustion process.
- Oil is also used to lubricate the stems of the intake valves. Some of this oil is sucked into the combustion chamber together with the intake air and is burned along with the fuel. High temperature exhaust gases also burn the oil used to lubricate the exhaust valve stems.

The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the viscosity of the oil, the quality of the oil and the way the vehicle is driven.

More oil is consumed under driving conditions such as high speeds and frequent acceleration and deceleration.

A new engine consumes more oil, since its pistons, piston rings and cylinder walls have not become conditioned.

When judging the amount of oil consumption, keep in mind that the oil may have become diluted, making it difficult to judge the true level accurately.

For example, if a vehicle is used for repeated short trips and consumes a normal amount of oil, the dipstick may not show any drop in the oil level at all, even after 1000 km (600 miles) or more. This is because the oil is gradually becoming diluted with fuel or moisture, making it appear that the oil level has not changed.

The diluting ingredients evaporate out when the vehicle is then driven at high speeds, as on an expressway, making it appear that oil is excessively consumed after driving at high speeds.

ENGINE

Importance of engine oil level check

One of the most important points in proper vehicle maintenance is to keep the engine oil at the optimum level so that oil function will not be impaired. Therefore, it is essential that the oil level be checked regularly. Lexus recommends that the oil level be checked every time you refuel the vehicle.

NOTICE

Failure to check the oil level regularly could lead to serious engine trouble due to insufficient oil.

For detailed information on oil level check, see "Checking the engine oil level" on page 253.

USED ENGINE OIL

CAUTION

- **Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact with it. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.**
- **Do not leave used oil within the reach of children.**
- **Dispose of used oil and used oil filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and used oil filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer or a service station for information concerning recycling or disposal.**

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

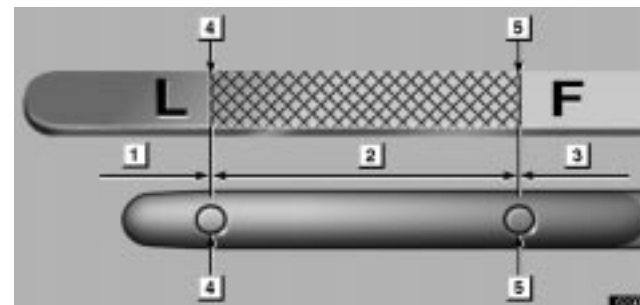


►GS430

►GS300

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

1. To get a true reading, the vehicle should be on a level spot. After turning off the engine, wait a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.
2. Pull out the dipstick, and wipe it clean with a rag.
3. Reinsert the dipstick and push it in as far as it will go, or the reading will not be correct.



1 Add oil 2 O.K. 3 Too full

4. Pull the dipstick out and look at the oil level on the end. If it is between the low level mark (**4**) and the full level mark (**5**), it is O.K.

ENGINE



► **GS430**

► **GS300**

If the oil level is below or only slightly above the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as already in the engine.

Remove the oil filler cap and add engine oil a little at a time, checking the dipstick. The approximate quantity of oil needed to fill between the low level mark and the full level mark on the dipstick is indicated below for reference.

When the level reaches within the correct range, return the filler cap and turn the cap clockwise until you hear a click.

Oil quantity: L (qt., Imp. qt.) 1.8 (1.9, 1.6)

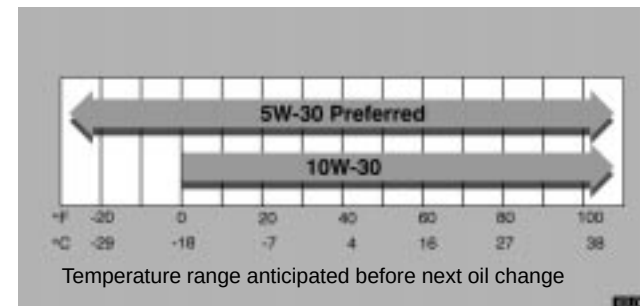
NOTICE

Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged. Check the oil level on the dipstick once again after adding the oil.

Engine oil selection

Use API SJ, "Energy-Conserving" multigrade engine oil or ILSAC multigrade engine oil.

Recommended viscosity (SAE):



SAE 5W-30 is the best choice for your vehicle, for good fuel economy, and good starting in cold weather.

If you use SAE 10W-30 engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.

Oil identification marks



► **API Service Symbol**

► **ILSAC Certification Mark**

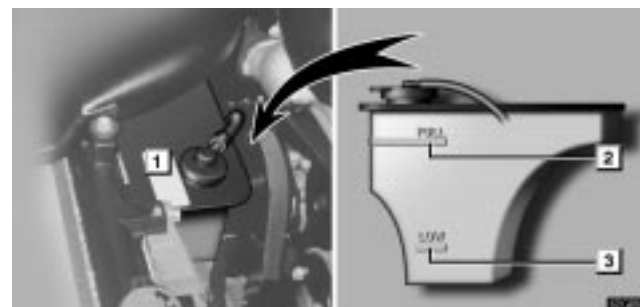
Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.

- The API Service Symbol is located anywhere on the outside of the container.

The top portion of the label shows the oil quality by API (American Petroleum Institute) designation such as SJ. The center portion of the label shows the SAE viscosity grade such as SAE 5W-30. "Energy-Conserving", shown in the lower portion, indicates that the oil has fuel-saving capabilities.

- The ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

CHECKING THE ENGINE COOLANT LEVEL



► **1 Reservoir cap** **2 Upper line** **3 Lower line**

Look at the see-through coolant reservoir when the engine is cold. The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "FULL" and "LOW" lines on the reservoir. If the level is low, add ethylene-glycol type coolant for a proper corrosion protection of aluminum components.

The coolant level in the reservoir will vary with engine temperature. However, if the level is on or below the "LOW" line, add coolant. Bring the level up to the "FULL" line.

Always use ethylene-glycol type coolant for a proper corrosion protection of aluminum components. See information in the next column.

ENGINE

If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing, there may be a leak in the system. Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine coolant filler cap, radiator cap and drain cock and water pump.

If you can find no leak, have your Lexus dealer test the cap pressure and check for leaks in the cooling system.



CAUTION

To prevent burning yourself, do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot.

Coolant type selection

Use of improper coolants may damage your engine cooling system. Your coolant must contain ethylene-glycol type coolant for a proper corrosion protection of your engine that contains aluminum components. Use "Toyota Long Life Coolant" or equivalent.

In addition to preventing freezing and subsequent damage to the engine, this type of coolant will also prevent corrosion. Further supplemental inhibitors or additives are neither needed nor recommended.

Read the coolant container for information on freeze protection. Follow the manufacturer's directions for how much to mix with plain water (preferably demineralized water or distilled water). The total capacity of the cooling system is given on page 245 or 247.

We recommend to use 50% solution for your Lexus, to provide protection down to about -35°C (-31°F). When it is extremely cold, to provide protection down to about -50°C (-58°F), 60% solution is recommended. Do not use more than 70% solution for better coolant performance.

NOTICE

Do not use alcohol type antifreeze or plain water alone.

SPARK PLUGS



►GS430

Your engine is fitted with iridium-tipped spark plugs.

NOTICE

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs and do not adjust gaps for your engine performance and smooth drivability.



►GS300

Your engine is fitted with the designated iridium-tipped spark plugs.

NOTICE

Use the designated iridium-tipped spark plugs and do not adjust gaps for your engine performance and smooth drivability.

SECTION 6 – 3

SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS

Chassis

Specifications (GS430)	260
Specifications (GS300)	263
Checking brake fluid	267
Checking power steering fluid (GS430)	268
Checking power steering fluid (GS300)	269
Checking tire pressure	271
Rotating tires	272
Checking and replacing tires	272
Installing snow tires and chains	275
Replacing wheels	276
Aluminum wheel precautions	277
Suspension and chassis	277

CHASSIS

SPECIFICATIONS (GS430)

– AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Fluid capacity Drain and refill Fluid type	1.8 L (1.9 qt., 1.5 Imp.qt.) Automatic transmission fluid Type T – IV*

– DIFFERENTIAL

Oil capacity Oil type Oil viscosity	1.35 L (1.42 qt., 1.19 Imp.qt.) Hypoid gear oil API GL–5 Above –18°C (0°F): SAE 90 Below –18°C (0°F): SAE 80W or SAE 80W–90

*Change automatic transmission fluid only as necessary. Generally, it is necessary to change automatic transmission fluid only if your vehicle is driven under one of the Special Operating Conditions listed in your “Owner’s Manual Supplement / Maintenance Schedule”. When changing the automatic transmission fluid, use only Toyota Genuine ATF Type T–IV (ATF JWS3309 or NWS6500) to aid in assuring optimum transmission performance.

NOTICE

Using automatic transmission fluid other than Toyota Genuine ATF Type T–IV may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the automatic transmission of your vehicle.

CHASSIS

– BRAKES

Pedal clearance * ¹	93 mm (3.7 in.) Min.
Pedal free play	0.2 – 2 mm (0.008 – 0.08 in.)
Brake pad wear limit	1.0 mm (0.04 in.)
Parking brake lining wear limit	1.0 mm (0.04 in.)
Parking brake adjustment * ²	7 – 9 clicks
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3

*¹Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with the force of 196 N (20 kgf, 44 lbf.) with the engine running

*²Parking brake adjustment when depressed with the force of 294 N (30 kgf, 66.1 lbf.)

– STEERING

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)
Power steering fluid	Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III

CHASSIS

– TIRES AND WHEELS

Tire size	Type A: 225/55R16 94V Type B: 235/45ZR17
Tire inflation pressure Recommended cold tire inflation pressure 225/55R16 94V 235/45ZR17	Front 220 kPa (2.2 kgf/cm ² or bar, 32 psi) Rear 220 kPa (2.2 kgf/cm ² or bar, 32 psi) Front 230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm ² or bar, 33 psi) Rear 230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm ² or bar, 33 psi) For sustained high speeds above 160 km/h (100 mph), in countries where such speeds are permitted by law, add 70 kPa (0.8 kgf/cm ² , 0.7 bar, 10 psi) to the front tires and rear tires, but never exceed the maximum cold tire pressure molded on the tire sidewall.
Wheel size	Type A: 16 x 7 1/2 JJ Type B: 17 x 8 JJ
Wheel nut torque	103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 76 ft·lbf.)

NOTE: For complete information on tires (e.g. replacing tires or replacing wheels), see “Checking tire pressure” through “Aluminum wheel precautions” on page 271 through 277.

SPECIFICATIONS (GS300)

– AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Fluid capacity Drain and refill Fluid type	2.0 L (2.1 qt., 1.8 Imp.qt.) Automatic transmission fluid Type T – IV*

– DIFFERENTIAL

Oil capacity Oil type Oil viscosity	1.35 L (1.42 qt., 1.19 Imp.qt.) Hypoid gear oil API GL–5 Above –18°C (0°F): SAE 90 Below –18°C (0°F): SAE 80W or SAE 80W–90

*Change automatic transmission fluid only as necessary. Generally, it is necessary to change automatic transmission fluid only if your vehicle is driven under one of the Special Operating Conditions listed in your “Owner’s Manual Supplement / Maintenance Schedule”. When changing the automatic transmission fluid, use only Toyota Genuine ATF Type T–IV (ATF JWS3309 or NWS6500) to aid in assuring optimum transmission performance.

NOTICE

Using automatic transmission fluid other than Toyota Genuine ATF Type T–IV may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the automatic transmission of your vehicle.

CHASSIS

– BRAKES

Pedal clearance * ¹	93 mm (3.7 in.) Min.
Pedal free play	0.2 – 2 mm (0.008 – 0.08 in.)
Brake pad wear limit	1.0 mm (0.04 in.)
Parking brake lining wear limit	1.0 mm (0.04 in.)
Parking brake adjustment * ²	7 – 9 clicks
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3

*¹Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with the force of 196 N (20 kgf, 44 lbf.) with the engine running

*²Parking brake adjustment when depressed with the force of 294 N (30 kgf, 66.1 lbf.)

– STEERING

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)
Power steering fluid	Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III

- TIRES AND WHEELS (Type A)

Tire size	P215/60R16 94V
Tire inflation pressure	
Recommended cold tire inflation pressure	Front 210 kPa (2.1 kgf/cm ² or bar, 30 psi)
P215/60R16 94V	Rear 210 kPa (2.1 kgf/cm ² or bar, 30 psi)
	For sustained high speeds above 160 km/h (100 mph), in countries where such speeds are permitted by law, add 90 kPa (1.0 kgf/cm ² , 0.9 bar, 13 psi) to the front tires and rear tires, but never exceed the maximum cold tire pressure molded on the tire sidewall.
Wheel size	16 x 7 1/2 JJ
Wheel nut torque	103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 76 ft·lbf.)

NOTE: For complete information on tires (e.g. replacing tires or replacing wheels), see “Checking tire pressure” through “Aluminum wheel precautions” on page 271 through 277.

CHASSIS

– TIRES AND WHEELS (Type B)

Tire size	225/55R16 94V
Tire inflation pressure	
Recommended cold tire inflation pressure	
225/55R16 94V	Front 220 kPa (2.2 kgf/cm ² or bar, 32 psi) Rear 220 kPa (2.2 kgf/cm ² or bar, 32 psi) For sustained high speeds above 160 km/h (100 mph), in countries where such speeds are permitted by law, add 80 kPa (0.9 kgf/cm ² , 0.8 bar, 12 psi) to the front tires and rear tires, but never exceed the maximum cold tire pressure molded on the tire sidewall.
Wheel size	16 x 7 1/2 JJ
Wheel nut torque	103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 76 ft·lbf.)

NOTE: For complete information on tires (e.g. replacing tires or replacing wheels), see “Checking tire pressure” through “Aluminum wheel precautions” on page 271 through 277.

CHECKING BRAKE FLUID



To check the fluid level, simply look at the see-through reservoir. The level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines on the tank.

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.

If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious mechanical problem.

If the level is low, add FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid to the brake reservoir.

Refilling brake fluid:

1. Turn the ignition switch off.
2. Depress the brake pedal more than 40 times.
3. Remove the reservoir cap by hand. Add brake fluid up to the "MAX" line.

If you do not follow the procedure above, the reservoir may overflow.

Use only newly opened brake fluid. Once opened, brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air, and excess moisture can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency.



CAUTION

Take care when filling the reservoir because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water immediately. If you still feel uncomfortable with your eyes, go to the doctor.

NOTICE

If you spill some of the fluid, be sure to wipe it off to prevent it from damaging the parts or paintwork.

CHECKING POWER STEERING FLUID (GS430)



Check the fluid level through the reservoir. If necessary, add automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III.

If the vehicle has been driven around 80 km/h (50 mph) for 20 minutes (a little more in frigid temperatures), the fluid is hot (60°C – 80°C or 140°F – 175°F). You may also check the level when the fluid is cold (about room temperature, 10°C – 30°C or 50°F – 85°F) if the engine has not been run for about five hours.



- **1** If hot O.K. **2** If hot add **3** If cold O.K.
4 If cold add

Clean all dirt off the reservoir and look at the fluid level. If the fluid is cold, the level should be in the "COLD" range. Similarly, if it is hot, the fluid level should be in the "HOT" range. If the level is at the low side of the appropriate range, add automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III to bring the level within the range.

To remove the reservoir cap, turn it counterclockwise and lift up. To reinstall it, turn it clockwise. After replacing the reservoir cap, visually check the steering box case, vane pump and hose connections for leaks or damage.

CAUTION

The reservoir may be hot so be careful not to burn yourself.

NOTICE

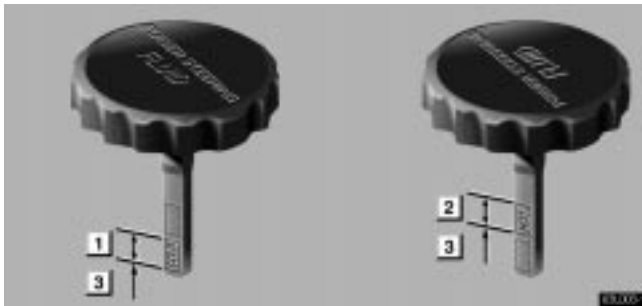
Avoid overfilling, or the power steering could be damaged.

**CHECKING POWER STEERING
FLUID (GS300)**

Check the fluid level on the dipstick. If necessary, add automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III.

If the vehicle has been driven around 80 km/h (50 mph) for 20 minutes (a little more in frigid temperatures), the fluid is hot (60°C – 80°C or 140°F – 175°F). You may also check the level when the fluid is cold (about room temperature, 10°C – 30°C or 50°F – 85°F) if the engine has not been run for about five hours.

CHASSIS



► **1** If cold O.K. **2** If hot O.K. **3** Add fluid

1. Clean all dirt off the reservoir.
2. Remove the reservoir cap by turning it counterclockwise and wipe the dipstick clean.
3. Reinstall the reservoir cap.
4. Remove the reservoir cap again and look at the fluid level. If the fluid is cold, the level should be in the "COLD" range on the dipstick. Similarly, if it is hot, the fluid level should be in the "HOT" range. If the level is at the low side of either range, add automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III to bring the level within the range.
5. After replacing the reservoir cap, visually check the steering box case, vane pump and hose connections for leaks or damage.

CAUTION

The reservoir may be hot so be careful not to burn yourself.

NOTICE

Avoid overfilling, or the power steering could be damaged.

CHECKING TIRE PRESSURE



The recommended cold tire pressures, tire size and the vehicle capacity weight are given on the label.

You should check the tire pressures every two weeks, or at least once a month. And don't forget the spare! The pressure for the spare tire should be the same with that for the standard tire. (See page 262 or 265.) Incorrect tire pressure can reduce tire life and make your vehicle less safe to drive.

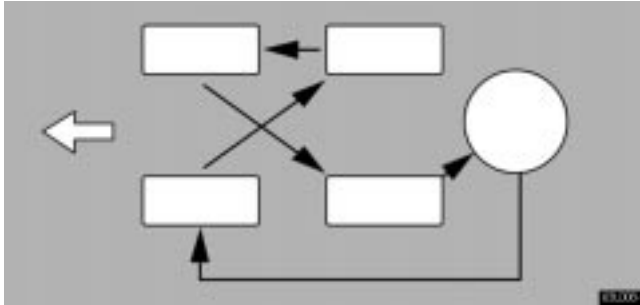
Low tire pressure results in excessive wear, poor handling, reduced fuel economy, and the possibility of blowouts from overheated tires. Also, low tire pressure can cause poor sealing of the tire bead. If the tire pressure is excessively low, there is the possibility of wheel deformation and/or tire separation. So keep your tire pressures at the proper level. If a tire needs frequent refilling, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

High tire pressure produces a harsh ride, handling problems, excessive wear at the center of the tire tread, and a greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards.

The following instructions for checking tire pressure should be observed:

- **The pressure should be checked only when the tires are cold.** If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours and has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile since, you will get an accurate cold tire pressure reading.
- **Always use a tire pressure gauge.** The appearance of the tire can be misleading. Besides, tire pressures that are even just a few pounds off can degrade ride and handling.
- **Do not bleed or reduce tire pressure after driving.** It is normal for the tire pressure to be higher after driving.
- **Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.** The passengers and luggage weight should be located so that the vehicle is balanced.
- **Be sure to reinstall the tire valve caps.** Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If the caps have been lost, have new ones put on as soon as possible.

ROTATING TIRES



To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that you rotate your tires according to the maintenance schedule. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Maintenance Schedule".) However, the most appropriate timing for tire rotation may vary according to your driving habits and road surface conditions.

The wheel assemblies must be rotated as illustrated above.

When rotating tires, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tire pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, or severe braking.

Before storing radial, snow or studded tires, mark the direction of rotation and be sure to install them in the same direction when using them again. Tires should be stored in a cool dry place.

CHECKING AND REPLACING TIRES

When to replace your tires



- **1** New tread **2** Tread wear indicator
3 Worn tread

Replace the tires when the tread wear indicators show. The location of the tread wear indicators is shown by the "TWI" or "Δ" marks molded on the sidewall of each tire.

The tires on your Lexus have built-in tread wear indicators to help you know when the tires need replacement. When the tread depth wears to 1.6 mm (0.06 in.) or less, the indicators will appear. If you can see the indicators in two or more adjacent grooves, the tire should be replaced.

Vehicles equipped with 235/45ZR17 tires: Your Lexus has been fitted with specially developed tires which provide exceptional dynamic performance under general road conditions. However your riding comfort may worsen a little and road noise may increase during driving. You may also notice that your tires will wear more rapidly and tire grip performance will be reduced on the snowy and/or icy roads when compared to standard tires. Be sure to have snow tires or tire chains on the snowy and/or icy roads and drive carefully with the speed appropriate for road conditions.

The effectiveness of snow tires is lost if the tread wears down below 4 mm (0.16 in.).

If you have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, or bulges indicating internal damage, the tire should be replaced.

If a tire often goes flat or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage, it should be replaced. If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

If an air loss occurs while driving, do not continue driving with a deflated tire. Driving even a short distance can damage a tire beyond repair.

Any tires which are over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if damage is not obvious.

Tires deteriorate with age even if they have never or seldom been used.

This also applies to the spare tire and tires stored for future use.

Uniform tire quality grading

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation. It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Lexus vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Lexus dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

DOT quality grades – All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

Treadwear – The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 – 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA, A, B, C – The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

CHASSIS

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

Temperature A, B, C – The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grades for this tire are established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Tire selection

When replacing a tire, use only the same size and construction as originally installed and with the same or greater load capacity.

Using any other size or type of tire may seriously affect handling, ride, speedometer/odometer calibration, ground clearance, and clearance between the body and tires or snow chains.

Do not mix radial, belted, or conventional tires on your vehicle.

Do not use tires or wheels other than the manufacturer's recommended size.

It can cause dangerous handling characteristics, resulting in loss of control. If you need to change from conventional tires to radial tires or vice versa, replace them as a set.

INSTALLING SNOW TIRES AND CHAINS

When to use snow tires or chains

Snow tires or chains are recommended when driving on snow or ice.

On wet or dry roads, conventional or radial tires provide better traction than snow or studded tires.

Snow tire selection

If you need snow tires, select the same size, construction and load capacity as the original tires on your Lexus.

Do not use tires other than stated above. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restrictions.

Snow tire installation

Snow tires should be installed on all wheels.

Installing snow tires on the rear wheels only can lead to an excessive difference in road grip capability between the front and rear tires which could cause loss of vehicle control.



CAUTION

- **Do not drive with the snow tires incorrectly inflated.**
- **Never drive over 120 km/h (75 mph) with any type of snow tires.**

Tire chain selection

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary according to location or type of road. Always check the local regulations before installing chains.

Use SAE Class "S" type radial tire chains, with the exception of radial cable chains or V-bar type chains.

CHASSIS

Chain installation

Install the chains on the rear tires as tightly as possible. Do not use tire chains on the front tires. Retighten chains after driving 0.5 – 1.0 km (1/4 – 1/2 mile).

When installing chains on your tires, carefully follow the instructions of the chain manufacturer.



CAUTION

- Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.
- Drive carefully avoiding bumps, holes, and sharp turns, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.
- Avoid sharp turns or locked-wheel braking, as use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.
- When driving with chains installed, be sure to drive carefully. Slow down before entering the curves to avoid losing control of the vehicle. Otherwise an accident may occur.

REPLACING WHEELS

When to replace your wheels

If you have wheel damage such as bends, cracks or heavy corrosion, the wheel should be replaced.

If you fail to replace damaged wheels, the tire may slip off the wheel or cause loss of handling control.

Replacement with used wheels is not recommended as they may have been subjected to rough treatment or high mileage and could fail without warning. Also, bent wheels which have been straightened may have hidden structural damage and therefore should not be used. Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and offset.

Correct replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

A wheel of a different size or type may adversely affect handling, wheel and bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer/odometer calibration, stopping ability, headlight aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire or snow chain clearance to the body and chassis.

ALUMINUM WHEEL PRECAUTIONS

- When installing aluminum wheels, check that the wheel nuts are tight after driving your vehicle the first 1600 km (1000 miles).
- If you have rotated, repaired, or changed your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).
- When using tire chains, be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels.
- Use only the Lexus wheel nuts and wrench designed for your aluminum wheels.
- When balancing your wheels, use only Lexus balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer.
- As with any wheel, periodically check your aluminum wheels for damage. If damaged, replace immediately.

SUSPENSION AND CHASSIS



CAUTION

Do not modify the suspension/chassis with lift kits, spacers, springs, etc. It can cause dangerous handling characteristics, resulting in loss of control.

SECTION 6 – 4

SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS

Electrical components

Specifications	280
Checking battery condition	284
Battery recharging precautions	286
Checking and replacing the blade type fuses	287
Checking the cartridge type fuses	289
Adding washer fluid	290
Checking the headlight aim	291
Replacing light bulbs	293

ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

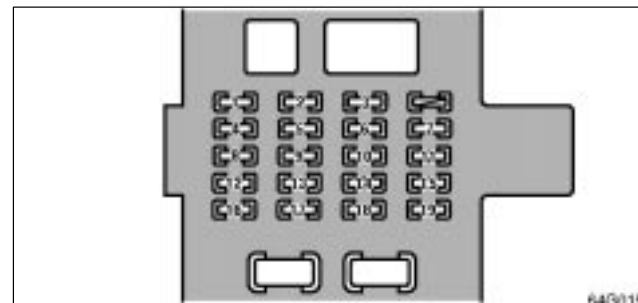
SPECIFICATIONS

– FUSE LOCATION

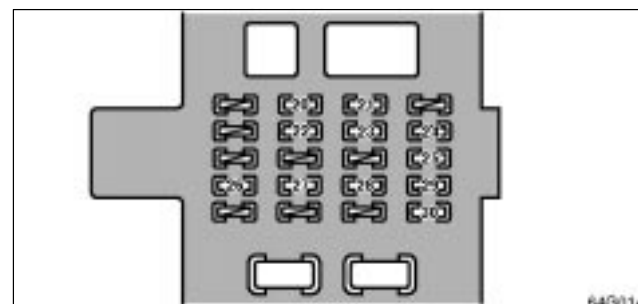


- **1** Engine compartment
- **2** Passenger's side kick panel
- **3** Driver's side kick panel
- **4** Engine compartment

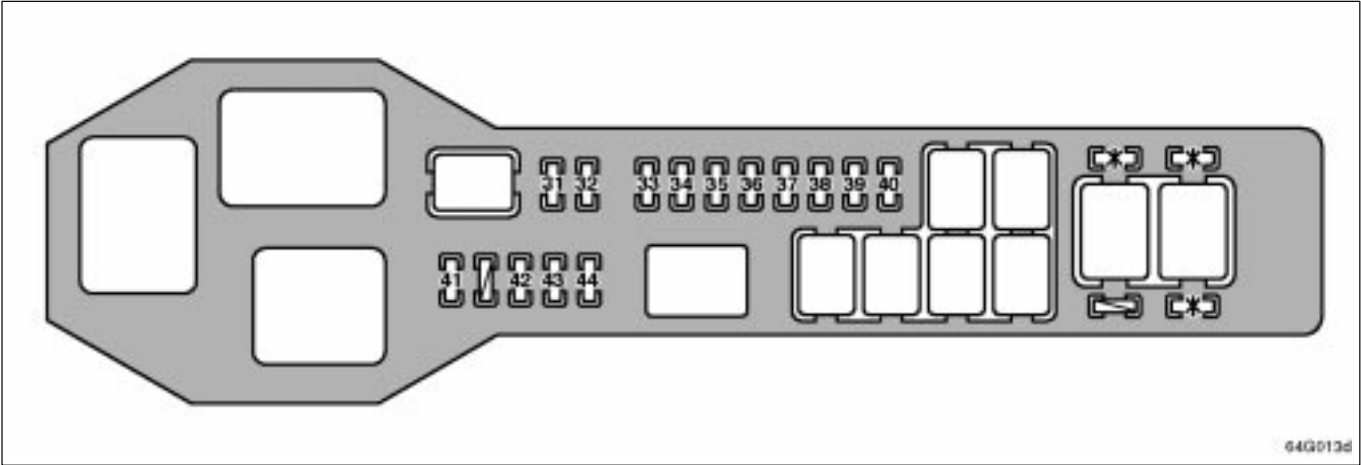
– FUSES



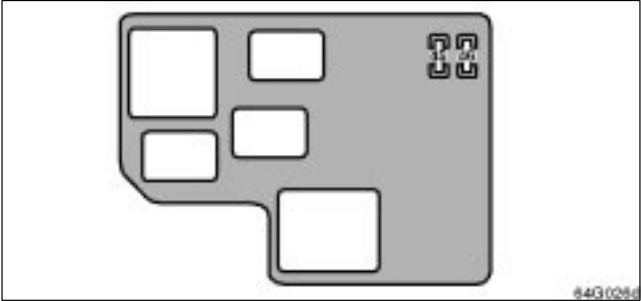
► Driver's side kick panel



► Passenger's side kick panel



► *Engine compartment*



► *Engine compartment*

ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
1	WASHER	20	Windshield washer
2	FR FOG	15	Fog lights
3	TAIL	10	Tail lights, Side marker lights, License plate lights, Parking lights
4	GAUGE	10	Back-up lights, Gauges and meters, service reminder indicators and buzzers
5	FUEL OPN	10	Fuel filler door opener
6	D FR DOOR	20	Power window system, Door lock system, Wireless remote control
7	PANEL	7.5	Emergency flashers, Headlight cleaner
8	HEATER	10	Air conditioning
9	SRS-B	5	Gauges and meters, service reminder indicators and warning buzzers
10	D P/SEAT	30	Power seat system
11	RADIO NO.2	15	Audio, Shift lock system
12	WIPER	25	Windshield wipers
13	OBD	7.5	On-board diagnosis
14	STOP	15	Stop lights, Anti-lock brake system, Traction control system

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
15	CIG	15	Cigarette lighter, Power outlet
16	ECU-IG	15	Power window, Door lock system, Wireless remote control, Theft deterrent system
17	STARTER	5	Starting system
18	IGN	5	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, SRS, Anti-lock brake system, Vehicle skid control system, Cruise control system
19	D RR DOOR	20	Power window system, Door lock system, Wireless remote control
20	RR FOG	10	No circuit
21	MIR HTR	10	Outside rear view mirror
22	S/ROOF	25	Moon roof
23	P FR DOOR	20	Power window system, Door lock system, Wireless remote control
24	P P/SEAT	30	Power seat system, Tilt and telescopic steering
25	DOME	10	Interior lights, Personal lights, Vanity lights, Trunk light, Clock
26	SEAT HTR	20	Seat heater

ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
27	4WS	25	No circuit
28	TV	15	No circuit
29	ECU-B2	5	Power seat system
30	P RR DOOR	20	Power window system, Door lock system, Wireless remote control
31	ECU-B1	20	Power window system, Door lock system, Wireless remote control, Theft deterrent system, Trunk lid opener, Interior lights, Personal lights, Clock, Headlight cleaner
32	MPX-B	10	Power window system, Door lock system, Wireless remote control, Theft deterrent system, Trunk lid opener
33	HORN	10	Horn
34	ETCS	15	Electronic throttle control system
35	AM2	15	Starting system, Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
36	TEL	15	No circuit
37	TURN-HAZ	10	Turn signal lights

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
38	EFI	25	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, Emission control system
39	ALT-S	5	Charging system
40	RADIO NO.1	30	Audio
41	DRL NO.2	30	Daytime running light system
42	DRL NO.1	30	Daytime running light system
43	H-LP L LWR	15	Left-hand headlight (low beam)
44	H-LP R LWR	15	Right-hand headlight (low beam)
45	H-LP R UPR	15	Right-hand headlight (high beam)
46	H-LP L UPR	15	Left-hand headlight (high beam)
※	SPARE		Spare fuse

CHECKING BATTERY CONDITION

Precautions

 **CAUTION**

BATTERY PRECAUTIONS

The battery produces flammable and explosive hydrogen gas.

- Do not cause a spark by contacting the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.

The electrolyte contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.

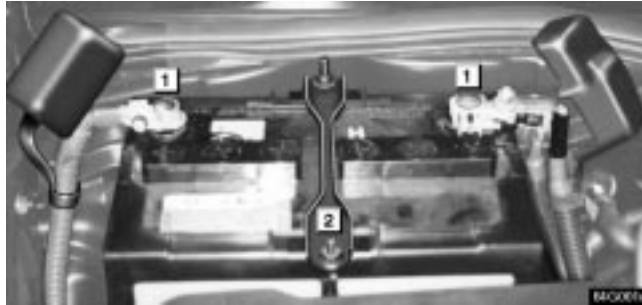
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin or clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

EMERGENCY MEASURES

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the medical office.

- If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contacted area. If you feel a pain or burn, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes, there is a possibility of its soaking through to your skin, so immediately take off the exposed clothing and follow the procedure above, if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte, drink a large quantity of water or milk. Follow with milk of magnesia, beaten raw egg or vegetable oil. Then go immediately for emergency help.

Checking battery exterior



► **1** Terminals **2** Hold-down clamp

Check the battery for corroded or loose connections, cracks, or loose hold-down clamps.

1. If the battery is corroded, wash it off with a solution of warm water and baking soda. Coat the terminals with grease to prevent further corrosion.
2. If the connections are loose, tighten the clamp bolts – but do not overtighten.
3. Tighten the hold-down clamp only enough to keep the battery firmly in place. Overtightening may damage the battery case.

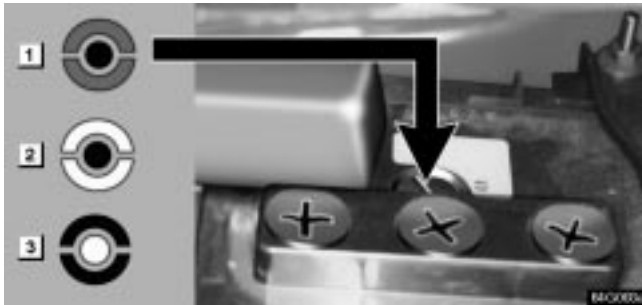
NOTICE

- *Make sure the engine and all accessories are turned off before performing maintenance.*
- *When checking the battery, remove the ground cable first and reinstall it last.*
- *Be careful not to cause a short circuit with tools.*
- *Take care no solution gets into the battery when washing it.*

ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

Checking battery fluid

Checking by hydrometer



Check the battery condition by the hydrometer color.

- 1 BLUE – Good condition.
- 2 WHITE – Charging necessary. Have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.
- 3 RED – Have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

Do not refill the battery with water.

BATTERY RECHARGING PRECAUTIONS

During recharging, the battery is producing hydrogen gas.

Therefore, before recharging:

1. If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
2. Make sure the power switch on the recharger is off when connecting the charger cables to the battery and when disconnecting them.

CAUTION

- Always charge the battery in an unconfined area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.
- Only do a slow charge (5 A or less). Charging at a quicker rate is dangerous. The battery may explode causing personal injuries.

NOTICE

Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

CHECKING AND REPLACING THE BLADE TYPE FUSES



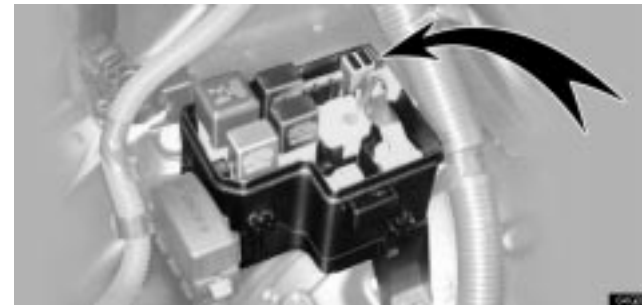
► *Driver's side kick panel*



► *Passenger's side kick panel*



► *Engine compartment* 1 Spare fuses 2 Pull-out tool

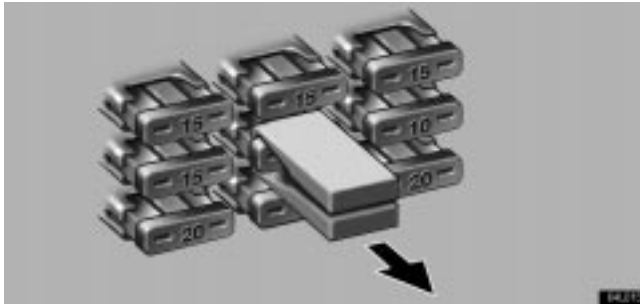


► *Engine compartment*

1. Turn the ignition switch off and open the fuse box lid.

Determine which fuse may be causing the problem. The lid of the fuse box shows the name of the circuit for each fuse.

ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS



2. Make sure the inoperative component is turned off. Pull the suspected fuse straight out with the pull-out tool and check it. If it has blown, push a new fuse into the clips.



► **Good**

► **Blown**

a. Look carefully at the fuse. If the thin wire is broken, the fuse has blown. If you are not sure or if it is too dark to see, try replacing the suspected fuse with one of the same value that you know is good.

b. Install only a fuse with the amperage rating designated on the fuse box lid.

If you do not have a spare fuse, in an emergency you can pull out the "CIG", "RAD NO.1" or "OBD" fuse, which may be dispensable for normal driving, and use it if its amperage rating is the same.

If you cannot use one of the same amperage, use one lower than, but as close as possible to, the amperage. If the amperage is lower than that specified, the fuse might blow out again but this does not indicate anything wrong. Be sure to get the correct fuse as soon as possible and return the substitute to its original clips.

It is a good idea to purchase a set of spare fuses and keep them in your vehicle for emergencies.

If the new fuse immediately blows out, there is a problem with the electrical system. Have your Lexus dealer correct it as soon as possible.

 CAUTION

Never use a fuse with a higher amperage rating, or any other object, in place of a fuse. This may cause extensive damage and possibly a fire.

CHECKING THE CARTRIDGE TYPE FUSES



► **1** *Good* **2** *Melted*

If the headlights or other electrical components do not work and the blade type fuses are O.K., check the cartridge type fuses. If any of the cartridge type fuses are blown, they must be replaced.

If there is an overload in the circuits from the battery, the fuses are designed to blow before the entire wiring harness is damaged.

ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS



CAUTION

Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent for replacement. Never install an ordinary wire – even for a temporary fix. This may cause extensive damage and possibly a fire.

NOTICE

Before replacing the fuses, have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

ADDING WASHER FLUID



If the washer tank becomes nearly empty, add washer fluid.

You may use plain water as washer fluid. However, in cold areas where temperatures range below the freezing point, use washer fluid containing antifreeze. This product is available at your Lexus dealer and most auto parts stores. Follow the manufacturer's directions for how much to mix with water.

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or any other substitute because it may damage your vehicle's paint.

CHECKING THE HEADLIGHT AIM

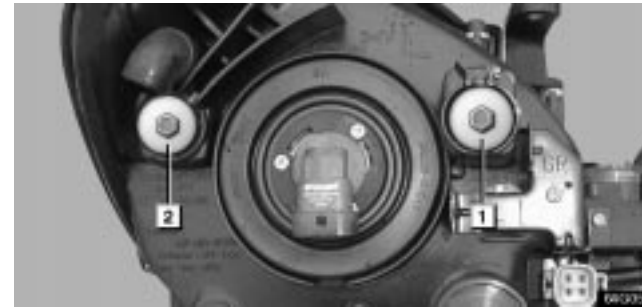


- **1** *Beam angle gauge (vertical movement)*
- 2** *Beam angle gauge (horizontal movement)*

Before checking the headlight aim:

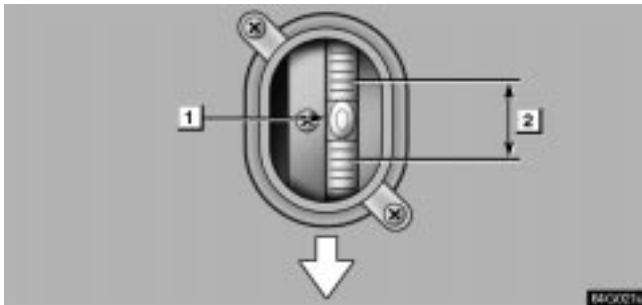
1. Be sure that the body around the headlight is not deformed.
2. Park the vehicle on a level spot.
3. The driver gets into the driver's seat and puts the vehicle in a state readying for a driving (with a full tank).
4. Bounce the vehicle several times.

Adjusting the headlight aiming



- **1** *Adjusting bolt A*
- 2** *Adjusting bolt B*

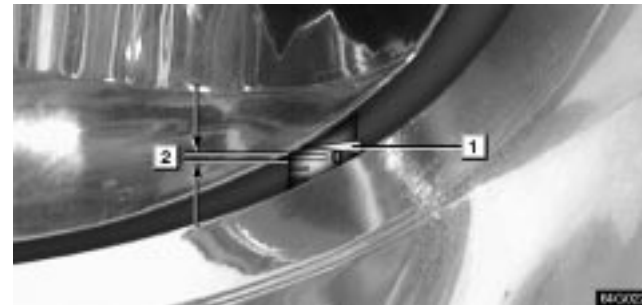
ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS



► **1** Bubble **2** Acceptable range

Vertical movement gauge: The bubble of the gauge should not deviate from the center of the gauge by more than 2 marks to either side of the gauge.

If the bubble is out of the acceptable range of the beam angle gauge, adjust it using bolt A.



► **1** Mark **2** Acceptable range

Horizontal movement gauge: The mark should not deviate by more than one mark to either side of the gauge.

If the edge of the lens does not match "0" mark, adjust the lens using bolt B.

If the error is over the value specified above, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer to adjust the headlight aim.

After adjusting the headlight in the vertical direction, check that the light has been shifted from the adjusted position in the horizontal direction.

REPLACING LIGHT BULBS

The illustration on the following pages show the locations of light bulbs. If it is necessary to replace a bulb, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Use bulbs with the bulb numbers and wattage ratings given in the table.

 **CAUTION**

- Do not disassemble, repair or take apart the low beam headlight bulbs, connector, power supply circuits and rotated components. Or you may be injured by electric shocks. Call your dealer when the headlights fail to work or have to be replaced or disposed of.
- Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and require special handling. They can burst or shatter if scratched or dropped. Hold a bulb only by its plastic or metal case. Do not touch the glass part of a bulb with bare hands.

NOTICE

Only use a bulb of the listed type.

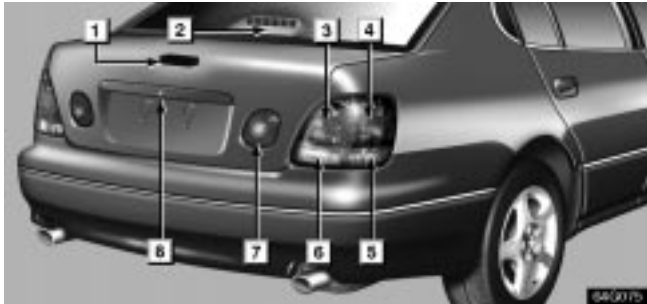
The inside of the lens of exterior lights such as headlights may temporarily fog up when the lense becomes wet in the rain or in a car wash. This is not a problem because the fogging is caused by the temperature difference between the outside and inside of the lens, just like the windshield fogged up in the rain. However, if there is a large drop of water on the inside of the lens, or if there is water pooled inside the light, contact your Lexus dealer.

ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

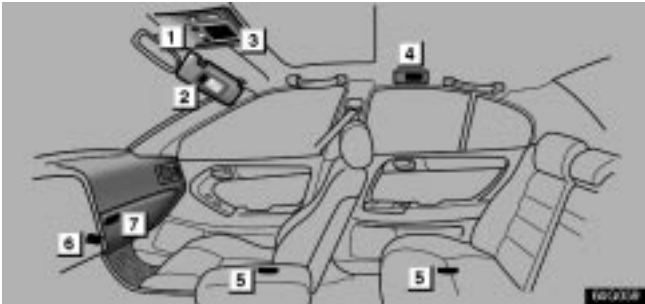
LIGHT LOCATION



Light Bulbs		Bulb No.	W	Type
1	Headlight (Low beam)			
	Discharge bulb	D2R	35	B
	Halogen bulb	HB4	51	C
2	Front turn signal light	1156	21	D
3	Headlight (High beam)	HB3	60	A
4	Parking light	—	5	D
5	Fog light	HB4	51	C
6	Front side marker light	194	3.8	D



Light Bulbs		Bulb No.	W	Type
1	Trunk light	194	3.8	D
2	High mounted stoplight	—	5	D
3	Tail/stop light	—	5/21	D
4	Tail light	—	5	D
5	Rear turn signal light	—	21	D
6	Back-up light	921	16	D
7	Tail/stop light	—	5/21	D
8	License plate light	—	5	D



Light Bulbs		Bulb No.	W	Type
1	Front personal lights	—	8	F
2	Vanity lights	—	3	E
3	Front interior lights	—	8	E
4	Rear personal lights	—	5	F
5	Door courtesy lights	194	3.8	D
6	Foot lights	—	1.4	D
7	Glove box light	—	1.2	D

- A: HB3 halogen bulbs
- B: D2R discharge bulbs
- C: HB4 halogen bulbs
- D: Wedge base bulbs
- E: Double end bulbs
- F: Single end bulbs

SECTION 6 – 5

SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS

Body

Specifications	298
Protecting your vehicle from corrosion	299
Washing and waxing	300
Cleaning the interior	302

BODY

SPECIFICATIONS

– DIMENSIONS AND WEIGHT

Overall length	4805 mm (189.2 in.)
Overall width	1800 mm (70.9 in.)
Overall height	1440 mm (56.7 in.)*
Wheelbase	2800 mm (110.2 in.)
Tread – Front	1535 mm (60.4 in.)
– Rear	1510 mm (59.4 in.)
Vehicle capacity weight (occupants + luggage)	400 kg (880 lb.)

*Unladen vehicle

– FUEL TANK

Capacity	75 L (19.8 gal., 16.5 Imp.gal.)

PROTECTING YOUR VEHICLE FROM CORROSION

Proper care of your Lexus can help ensure long-term corrosion prevention.

The most common causes of corrosion to your vehicle are:

- The accumulation of road salt, dirt and moisture in hard-to-reach areas under the vehicle.
- Chipping of paint or undercoating caused by minor accidents or by stones and gravel.

The following conditions will cause or accelerate corrosion of your vehicle, so it is important to keep your vehicle, particularly the underside, as clean as possible and to repair any damage to paint or protective coatings as soon as possible.

- The presence of road salt or dust control chemicals, salt in the air near the sea coast, industrial air pollution.
- High humidity, especially at temperatures just above freezing point.
- Certain parts of your vehicle are wet or damp for an extended period of time, even though other parts of the vehicle are dry.
- Components of the vehicle which are prevented from quick-drying due to lack of proper ventilation are exposed to high ambient temperature.

To help prevent corrosion on your Lexus, follow these guidelines:

Keep your vehicle clean by regular washing. In addition, observe the following points.

- If you drive on salted roads in the winter or if you live near the ocean, you should hose off the undercarriage at least once a month to minimize corrosion.
- High pressure water or steam is effective for cleaning the vehicle's underside and wheel housings. Pay particular attention to these areas as it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to simply wet the mud and debris without removing them. The lower edge of doors, rocker panels and frame members have drain holes which should not be allowed to clog with dirt as trapped water in these areas can cause corrosion.
- Wash the underside of the vehicle thoroughly when winter is over.

See "Washing and waxing" on page 300 for more tips.

Check the condition of your vehicle's paint and trim. If you find any chips or scratches in the paint, touch them up immediately to prevent corrosion from starting. If the chips or scratches have gone through the bare metal, have a qualified body shop make the repair.

BODY

Check the interior of your vehicle. Water and dirt can accumulate under the floor mats and could cause corrosion. Occasionally check under the mats to make sure the area is dry. Be particularly careful when transporting chemicals, cleansers, fertilizers, salt, etc. These should be transported in proper containers. If a spill or leak should occur, immediately clean and dry the area.

Keep your vehicle in a well ventilated garage or a roofed place. Do not park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. If you wash your vehicle in the garage, or if you drive it in covered with water or snow, your garage may be so damp it will cause corrosion. Even if your garage is heated, a wet vehicle can corrode if the ventilation is poor.

WASHING AND WAXING

Washing your Lexus

Keep your vehicle clean by regular washing.

The following cases may cause weakness to the paint or corrosion to the body and parts. Wash your vehicle as soon as possible.

- When driving in a coastal area
- When driving on a road sprinkled with antifreeze
- When having coal tar, tree sap, bird droppings and carcass of an insect
- When driving in the areas where there is a lot of smoke, soot, dust, iron dust and chemical substance
- When the vehicle becomes remarkably dirty with dust and mud

Hand-washing your Lexus

Work in the shade and wait until the vehicle body is not hot to the touch.

1. Rinse off loose dirt with a hose. Remove any mud or road salt from the underside of the vehicle or in the wheel wells.
2. Wash with a mild car-wash soap, mixed according to the manufacturer's instructions. Use a soft cotton mitt and keep it wet by dipping it frequently into the wash water. Do not rub hard – let the soap and water remove the dirt.

Plastic wheel ornaments: The plastic wheel ornaments are damaged easily by organic substances. If any organic substance splashes an ornament, be sure to wash it off with water and check if the ornament is damaged.

 CAUTION

Do not attach the heavily damaged plastic wheel ornament. It may fly off the wheel and cause accidents while the vehicle is moving.

Aluminum wheels: Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent.

Urethane bumpers and side moldings: Wash carefully. Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners. The bumper and side molding faces are soft.

Road tar: Remove with turpentine or cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces.

NOTICE

Do not use organic substances (gasoline, kerosene, benzine or strong solvents), which may be toxic or cause damage.

3. Rinse thoroughly – dried soap can cause streaking. In hot weather you may need to rinse each section right after you wash it.

4. To prevent water spots, dry the vehicle using a clean soft cotton towel. Do not rub or press hard – you might scratch the paint.

Automatic car wash

Your vehicle may be washed in an automatic car wash, but remember that the paint can be scratched by some type of brushes, unfiltered washing water, or the washing process itself. Scratching reduces paint durability and gloss, especially on darker colors. The manager of the car wash should be able to advise you whether the process is safe for the paint on your vehicle.

Waxing your Lexus

Polishing and waxing is recommended to maintain the original beauty of your Lexus' finish.

Once a month or if the vehicle surface does not repel water well, apply wax.

1. Always wash and dry the vehicle surface before you begin waxing, even if you are using a combined cleaner and wax.
2. Use a good quality polish and wax. If the finish has become extremely weathered, use a car-cleaning polish, followed by a separate wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Be sure to polish and wax the chrome trim as well as the paint.
3. Wax the vehicle again when water does not bead but remains on the surface in large patches.

BODY

CLEANING THE INTERIOR



CAUTION

- Be careful not to splash water or spill liquid on the floor. This may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, resulting in serious injury.
- Do not wash the vehicle floor with water, or allow water to get onto the floor when cleaning the vehicle interior or exterior. Water may get into audio components or other electrical components above or under the floor carpet (or mat) and cause a malfunction; and it may cause body corrosion.

Leather Interior

The selected leather is used in your Lexus. Due to a leather product, some parts of leather may be rough, uneven or scratched originally.

To keep good appearance, we recommend you to clean it periodically twice a year.

Remove dirt on the leather in the following ways:

1. Wipe it off lightly using a soft cloth (e.g. gauze) dampened with 5% solution of neutral detergent for wool.
2. Wring water from a clean cloth and thoroughly wipe off all traces of detergent with it.

3. Wipe off the surface of the leather with a dry soft cloth. Allow the leather to dry in a ventilated shaded area. Excess of wet may cause the hardening or shrinking of the leather.

NOTICE

- *Dirt or sand adhered to the leather may damage the treated surface and cause it to wear earlier. Remove dirt or sand using a vacuum cleaner.*
- *If a stain should fail to come out with a neutral detergent, apply a cleaner that does not contain an organic solvent.*
- *Never use organic substances such as benzene, alcohol or gasoline, or alkaline or acid solutions for cleaning the leather as these could cause discoloring.*
- *Use of a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, etc. may scratch the fine grained surface of the leather.*
- *Mildew may develop on soiled leather upholstery. Be especially careful to avoid oil spots. Try to keep your upholstery always clean.*
- *Long exposure to direct sunlight may cause the leather surface to harden and shrink. Keep your vehicle in a shaded area, especially in the summer.*
- *The interior of your vehicle is apt to heat up on hot summer days, so avoid placing on the upholstery items made of vinyl or plastic or containing wax as these tend to stick to leather when warm.*

- *Improper cleaning of the leather upholstery could result in discoloration or staining.*

Synthetic Leather Areas (Dash and sun visors)

The synthetic leather areas may be easily cleaned with a mild soap or detergent and water.

First vacuum over the upholstery to remove loose dirt. Then, using a sponge or soft cloth, apply the soap solution to the synthetic leather. After allowing it to soak in for a few minutes to loosen the dirt, remove the dirt and wipe off the soap with a clean damp cloth. If all the dirt does not come off, repeat the procedure. Commercial foaming-type cleaners are also available which work well. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

NOTICE

Do not use solvent, thinner, gasoline or window cleaner on the interior.

Carpets, Windows and Seat Belts

Begin by vacuuming thoroughly to remove as much dirt as possible. Several types of foam cleaners are available; some are in aerosol cans and others are powders or liquids which you mix with water to produce a foam. To shampoo the carpets, use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not apply water – the best results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible. Read the shampoo instructions and follow them closely.

The seat belts may be cleaned with mild soap and water or with lukewarm water.

Use a cloth or sponge. As you are cleaning, check the belts for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

NOTICE

- *Use a good foam-type shampoo to clean the carpets.*
- *Do not use dye or bleach on the belts – it may weaken them.*
- *Do not use the belts until they become dry.*
- *The windows may be cleaned with any household window cleaner.*
- *When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires.*

BODY

Air Conditioning Control Panel, Car Audio, Instrument Panel, Console Panel, and Switches

Use a soft damp cloth for cleaning.

Soak a clean soft cloth in water or lukewarm water then lightly wipe off any dirt.

NOTICE

- *Do not use organic substances (solvents, kerosene, alcohol, gasoline, etc.) or alkaline or acidic solutions. These chemicals can cause discoloring, staining or peeling of the surface.*
- *If you use cleaners or polishing agents, make sure their ingredients do not include the substances mentioned above.*
- *If you use a liquid car freshener, do not spill the liquid onto the vehicle's interior surfaces. It may contain the ingredients mentioned above. Immediately clean any spill using the method mentioned above.*

If you have any questions about the cleaning of your Lexus, your local Lexus dealer will be pleased to answer them.



2001 Lexus Navigation System

Including Early Production 2002 SC 430

Quick Reference Guide

ADDITIONAL NAVIGATION FUNCTIONS

Point of Interest (POI): Allows you to enter and route to categories such as airports, ATMs gas stations, golf courses, hotels, restaurants, and Lexus dealers.

Marked Point: Allows you to mark up to 100 of your favorite places or destinations including street addresses and phone numbers. You can retrieve these points by touching "Marked Points" on the "Destination" screen.

Previous Destination: Allows you to select one of your ten most recent destinations, saving you time by not having to enter the address again.

To view the demo mode, touch and hold **Start** for 10 seconds. The system will beep to indicate that the demo mode has begun.



To end the demo mode, press **MAP** on the navigation system face plate.



SPEECH COMMANDS (FOR THE LS 430 ONLY)

To activate the speech command option of the Lexus LS 430 Navigation System, press the speech command switch on the steering wheel command module. After you hear a beep, say one of the speech commands listed below. For some speech commands that affect the route guidance, the navigation system will confirm your command by asking, "Are you sure you want to...?" and will repeat the command. Press the speech command switch and reply yes or no.

For a complete list of possible speech commands, please consult the Lexus Navigation System Owner's Manual.

MAP OPERATION	DESTINATION FROM LIST	REPLY	POI DISPLAY ON MAP
Current position Zoom in, Zoom out Minimum scale, Maximum scale Change to north up Change to heading up Mark (to register a point)	*Go to marked point *Go to previous destination *Number one *Number two *Number three *Number four *Number five	Yes No	Airport ATM Automobile club Bank Gas station Grocery store Hospital Lexus dealership Parking garage/Parking lot Police station Rest area Restaurant (American Continental, French, Japanese, Mexican) POI off
GUIDANCE MODE CHANGE	ROUTE CHANGE	GUIDANCE HELP	
Change to arrow guidance Change to turn list guidance Change to single screen Change to split screen	*Cancel guidance *Reroute *Detour *Alternate roads *Delete (next, first, second, third, fourth, fifth, final) waypoint	Repeat guidance Show route Show destination Show (next, first, second, third, fourth, fifth, final) waypoint	
DESTINATION		VOLUME	
*Go home *Go to starting point		Louder Softer Voice guidance off Voice guidance on	

*Speech commands that require confirmation.

To access the Emergency screen, press **DEST** or **DESTINATION** on the navigation system face plate. Then touch 



The emergency screen will appear and offer several choices.



SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

This system is intended to assist you in reaching your destination and, if used properly, can do so. To use your system as safely as possible, follow all safety instructions.

YOU, AS THE DRIVER, ARE SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR THE SAFE OPERATION OF YOUR VEHICLE AND THE SAFETY OF YOUR PASSENGERS. DO NOT USE ANY FEATURE OF THIS SYSTEM TO THE EXTENT IT DISTRACTS YOU FROM SAFE DRIVING. YOUR FIRST PRIORITY WHILE DRIVING SHOULD ALWAYS BE THE SAFE OPERATION OF YOUR VEHICLE.

- Before attempting to use this system while driving, learn how to use it. Read the entire Navigation System Manual to make sure you understand the system. Do not allow others to use this system until they have read and understand these and other instructions in this manual.
- You can input your destination and select your route only when your vehicle is not moving. While driving, listen to the voice instructions as much as possible and glance at the screen briefly and only when safe.
- The data in the system may occasionally be incomplete. Road conditions, including driving restrictions (no left turns, street closures, etc.) frequently change. Therefore, before you follow any instruction from the system, look to see whether you can comply with the instruction safely and legally.
- This system cannot warn you about such things as the quality of a neighborhood, street conditions, and availability of emergency services. If you are unsure about the safety of an area, don't drive into it.

UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES IS THIS SYSTEM A SUBSTITUTE FOR THE DRIVER'S PERSONAL JUDGMENT

- We recommend that you obtain updated data as it becomes available in order to help use the system as effectively and safely as possible.
- Use this system only in locations where it is legal to do so. Some states/provinces may have laws prohibiting video screens within sight of the driver.

For additional information, please refer to the Lexus Navigation System Owner's Manual or call Lexus Customer Satisfaction at (800) 25-LEXUS (255-3987).

Lexus Navigation System Face Plate

LS 430 shown. Button positions may vary among models.

NORTH-UP AND MAP SCALE Symbol

This symbol indicates a map view with North-up. Press this symbol to change the map view to a head-up perspective. This symbol also indicates the map scale.

GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS) Mark

This mark is displayed whenever the GPS receiver within the navigation ECU is tracking the vehicle position.

MAP/GUIDE Symbol

Touch this symbol to change the screen mode.

CURRENT VEHICLE POSITION Mark

This mark indicates the current position of the vehicle.



MAP/VOICE Button

Push this button to repeat a Guidance voice, cancel the one touch scroll and start a Guidance.

DESTINATION Button

Push this button to display the DESTINATION screen.

OPTION Button

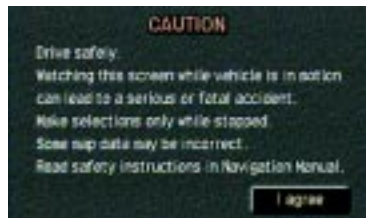
Push this button to display the MENU screen. This screen allows you to make adjustments or to correct settings of various options and functions.

ZOOM IN/ZOOM OUT Buttons

These symbols magnify or reduce the map scale.

DESTINATION INPUT

step 1



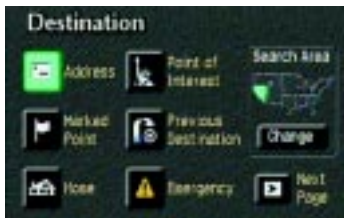
Read the CAUTION screen and touch **I agree**

step 2



The map screen appears. Press **DEST** or **ADDRESS** on the navigation system face plate.

step 3



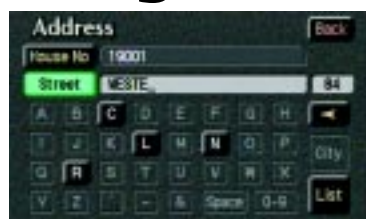
To access the address input screen, touch **Address**

step 4



Touch **House No** and type in the street address number.

step 5



Touch **Street** to input the street name and then touch **List**

step 6



Use the arrows to scroll up and down. Then select desired street by touching **Enter**

step 7



Select desired route or touch **Enter** and the system will begin searching the route.

step 8



Begin driving.

POINT OF INTEREST INPUT

step 1



Read the CAUTION screen and touch **I agree**

step 2



Press **DEST** or **ADDRESS** on the navigation system face plate. To access the POI screen, touch **Point of Interest**

step 3



Touch **Name** to type in the POI name or touch **Category** to view POI categories.

step 4



Input the POI name using the letter keys and touch **List**

step 5



Use the arrows to scroll up and down. Then select desired location by touching **Enter**

step 6



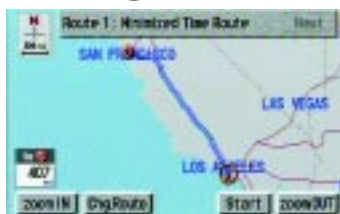
Select desired route preference or touch **Enter**

step 7



The system will begin searching the route.

step 8



Begin driving.

THE IMPORTANCE OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

Regular maintenance is essential to obtaining the highest level of performance, safety and reliability from your Lexus. It can also enhance your vehicle's resale value. This section of the *Owner's Manual Supplement* is designed to help you make sure your vehicle receives proper and timely maintenance. It includes factory-recommended maintenance guidelines as well as logs in which to document your vehicle's maintenance history.

In addition to scheduled maintenance, your Lexus requires ongoing general maintenance such as fluid checks and visual inspections. These procedures are described in the "Maintenance" section of the *Owner's Manual*.

With proper maintenance and care, your vehicle will last longer and deliver more dependable, economical performance. Follow this booklet's recommendations and you'll enjoy maximum reliability and peace of mind from your Lexus for many years to come.



Maintaining your vehicle according to the recommendations in this booklet is required to ensure that your warranty coverage remains intact. You should keep detailed records of vehicle maintenance, including date of service, mileage at time of service and a description of service and/or parts installation performed. The maintenance logs in this booklet are a good place to record this information. If you sell your vehicle, be sure to give your maintenance records to the new owner.

Lexus will not deny a warranty claim solely because you do not have records to show that you maintained your vehicle. However, damage or failures caused by lack of proper maintenance are not covered under warranty.

Maintenance and repair services may be performed by you or by any automotive service provider you choose. Lexus will not deny a warranty claim solely because you used a service provider other than a Lexus dealership for maintenance and repairs. However, damage

or failures caused by improper maintenance or repairs are not covered under warranty.

Your dealer may recommend more frequent maintenance intervals or more maintenance services than those listed in the scheduled maintenance log. These additional services are not required to maintain your warranty coverage. Ask your dealer for an explanation of any recommended maintenance not included in the scheduled maintenance log.

For a complete description of Lexus warranty coverages, see pages 16–33 of this booklet.

To ensure that your vehicle receives first-quality service and factory-authorized parts, Lexus recommends having maintenance performed by an authorized Lexus dealership.

Lexus dealership technicians are experts in the maintenance and repair of Lexus vehicles. They stay current on the latest service information through Lexus technical bulletins, service publications and training courses. Many are also certified through the Lexus Commitment to Perfection Certification Program, which requires specialized, state-of-the-art training as well as rigorous exams through both Lexus and the National Institute for Automotive Service Excellence.

Additionally, when you have your vehicle serviced at a Lexus dealership, your service information is recorded in the Lexus National Service History database. This is the first database of its kind in the automotive industry. It can be accessed by any Lexus dealership in the U.S. — a great convenience if you relocate or need to have your vehicle serviced while traveling.

You can be confident you're getting the best possible service for your vehicle when you take it to a Lexus dealership. Don't trust your investment to anything less than a team of Lexus specialists.

Determining the Proper Maintenance Interval

Depending on your circumstances, you should obtain maintenance for your Lexus every 5,000 miles or every 7,500 miles. Follow these guidelines to determine which interval to use.

5,000-Mile Intervals

Use 5,000-mile intervals if you *primarily* operate your vehicle under any of the following conditions:

- Driving on unpaved or dusty roads.
- Towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier.
- Repeated trips of less than five miles in temperatures below freezing.

7,500-Mile Intervals

Use 7,500-mile intervals if you *primarily* operate your vehicle under conditions other than those listed above.

Following the Maintenance Log Charts

The scheduled maintenance log identifies the maintenance required at each mileage interval and corresponding time interval based on mileage of 1,250 miles per month. If you drive more than 1,250 miles per month, you should obtain maintenance at the indicated mileage interval rather than the indicated time interval.

If you choose 5,000-mile intervals, follow the maintenance instructions shown below non-shaded headings such as this one:

5,000 Miles or 4 Months

If you choose 7,500-mile intervals, follow the maintenance instructions shown below shaded headings such as this one:

7,500 Miles or 6 Months

DETERMINING YOUR VEHICLE'S MAINTENANCE NEEDS

At 15,000-mile increments, the 5,000-mile and 7,500-mile intervals coincide. Therefore, shaded and non-shaded headings appear together, as in this example:

15,000 Miles or 12 Months
15,000 Miles or 12 Months

Special Operating Conditions

In addition to standard maintenance items, the scheduled maintenance log indicates services that should be performed on vehicles that are driven under special operating conditions. These conditions are listed in the next column.

You should perform the additional maintenance services if you drive *primarily* under any of these conditions during the maintenance interval period. If you drive only occasionally under these conditions during the maintenance interval period, it is not necessary to perform the additional services.

- Driving on rough, muddy or snow-melted roads
- Driving on salt-covered roads
- Driving on unpaved or dusty roads
- Extensive idling or low-speed driving for long distances
- Towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier

The following descriptions are provided to give you a better understanding of the maintenance services that should be performed on your vehicle. The scheduled maintenance log indicates at which mileage/time intervals each service should be performed. Please note that many maintenance services should be performed only by a qualified technician.

For further information on maintenance services that you can perform yourself, see the “Service Procedures and Specifications” section of your *Owner’s Manual*.

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash hands after handling.**

Air Conditioner Filter

Replace as directed at the maintenance interval you choose. Refer to your *Owner’s Manual* for service details.

Ball Joints and Dust Covers

Check the suspension and steering linkage ball joints for looseness and damage. Check all dust covers for deterioration and damage. A qualified technician should perform these inspections.

Body Inspection

Visually check for corrosion, scratches and other damage. Check outer body panels, inner panels of the hood and doors, and underneath the vehicle. Apply touch-up paint to any chips and scratches or have them repaired by a qualified technician.

Brake Fluid

Replace using fluid type specified in your *Owner’s Manual*. A qualified technician should perform this operation.

EXPLANATION OF MAINTENANCE ITEMS

Brake Lines and Hoses

Visually inspect for proper installation. Check for chafing, cracks, deterioration and evidence of leaking. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately. A qualified technician should perform these operations.

Brake Linings/Drums and Brake Pads/Discs

Check the parking brake linings (shoes) and drums for scoring, burning, fluid leakage, broken parts and excessive wear. Check brake pads for excessive wear and brake discs for runout, excessive wear and fluid leakage. A qualified technician should perform these inspections.

Charcoal Canister

Check for internal damage and clogging. If necessary, clean with compressed air or replace. A qualified technician should perform these operations.

Differential Oil

Check for correct oil level and inspect each differential component for signs of leakage. If you discover any leakage, have it repaired by a qualified technician immediately.

Drive Belts

Inspect for cracks, excessive wear and oiliness. Check the belt tension and adjust if necessary. Replace the belts if they are damaged.

Drive Shaft Boots

Check the drive shaft boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration and damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease. Re-torque the drive shaft flange bolts at the indicated intervals. A qualified technician should perform these operations.

Engine Air Filter

Check for damage, excessive wear and oiliness. Replace if necessary.

Engine Coolant

Drain and flush the cooling system and refill with an ethylene-glycol type coolant. A qualified technician should perform this operation.

Engine Oil and Oil Filter

Change the oil filter and replace the engine oil. For recommended oil grade and viscosity, refer to your *Owner's Manual*.

Engine Valve Clearance

Inspect for excessive lifter noise and engine vibration and adjust if necessary. A qualified technician should perform this operation.

Exhaust Pipes and Mountings

Visually inspect the exhaust pipes, muffler and hangers for cracks, deterioration and damage. Start the engine and listen carefully for any exhaust gas leakage. Tighten connections or replace parts as necessary.

Fuel Lines and Connections, Fuel Tank Band and Fuel Tank Vapor Vent System Hoses

Visually inspect for corrosion, damage, cracks and loose or leaking connections. Tighten connections or replace parts as necessary.

Fuel Tank Cap Gasket

Visually inspect for cracks, deterioration and damage and replace if necessary.

Nuts and Bolts on Chassis and Body

Re-tighten the seat mounting bolts and front/rear suspension member retaining bolts to specified torque.

Rack and Pinion Assembly

Inspect the rack and pinion assembly or steering gear box for signs of leakage. If you discover any leakage, have it repaired immediately by a qualified technician.

EXPLANATION OF MAINTENANCE ITEMS

Road Test

While driving the vehicle, check for proper operation of engine, transmission, brakes and steering. Also check for abnormal noise or vibration from any part of the vehicle.

Spark Plugs

Install new plugs of the same type as originally equipped. A qualified technician should perform this operation.

Steering Linkage and Boots

With the vehicle stopped, check for excessive freeplay in the steering wheel. Inspect the linkage for bending and damage and the dust boots for deterioration, cracks and damage. Replace any damaged parts. A qualified technician should perform these operations.

Timing Belt

Replace every 90,000 miles or 72 months. A qualified technician should perform this operation.

Tire Rotation

Tires should be rotated according to the instructions in your *Owner's Manual*. When rotating tires, check for damage and uneven wear.

Transmission Fluid

Check for correct fluid level and inspect each transmission component for signs of leakage. If you discover any leakage, have it repaired by a qualified technician immediately.

Free Scheduled Maintenance Services

The first two scheduled maintenance services for your Lexus are provided at no charge. The first service is at 30 days and includes a body/chassis inspection, a check for fluid leaks and a vehicle road test. The second service is at 5,000 miles/4 months or 7,500 miles/6 months, depending on which maintenance interval you use. This service includes a change of the engine oil and oil filter, rotation of the tires and a vehicle road test. See page 85 to determine the proper maintenance interval for your vehicle.

To obtain your complimentary scheduled maintenance services, call an authorized Lexus dealership to make an appointment, or take your vehicle to the dealership. The dealership will verify performance of the services in the boxes at the right.

30-Day Check

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

5,000-Mile/4-Month Service or 7,500-Mile/6-Month Service

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

5,000-Mile Maintenance Intervals

7,500-Mile Maintenance Intervals

To determine the appropriate maintenance interval for your vehicle, see page 85.

5,000 Miles or 4 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:²

- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ___ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ___ Engine air filter
 - ___ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ___ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ___ Drive shaft boots
 - ___ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

10,000 Miles or 8 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models, LS 430)
- ☐ Road test vehicle
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:²

- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (IS 300)³
- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ___ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ___ Engine air filter
 - ___ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ___ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ___ Drive shaft boots
 - ___ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

7,500 Miles or 6 Months

- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models)
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

15,000 Miles or 12 Months

15,000 Miles or 12 Months

- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (ES 300¹, GS models⁵)
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle
- ☐ Inspect the following:

☐ Ball joints and dust covers	☐ Drive shaft boots
☐ Body (see page 112)	☐ Exhaust pipes and mountings
☐ Brake lines and hoses	☐ Rack and pinion assembly
☐ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs	☐ Steering linkage and boots
☐ Differential oil	

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:²

- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect nuts and bolts on chassis and body
- ☐ Replace differential oil⁴

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

¹ If equipped.

² See page 86 to determine if your vehicle requires these maintenance items.

³ Only if vehicle is operated primarily on unpaved or dusty roads.

⁴ Only if vehicle is operated primarily while towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier.

⁵ Do not replace if replaced at 10,000 miles/8 months.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

5,000-Mile Maintenance Intervals

7,500-Mile Maintenance Intervals

To determine the appropriate maintenance interval for your vehicle, see page 85.

20,000 Miles or 16 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models², LS 430)
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:³

- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (IS 300)⁴
- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ☐ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ☐ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ☐ Drive shaft boots
 - ☐ Engine air filter
 - ☐ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ☐ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

25,000 Miles or 20 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:³

- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ☐ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ☐ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ☐ Drive shaft boots
 - ☐ Engine air filter
 - ☐ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ☐ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

22,500 Miles or 18 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter¹
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models, IS 300)⁵
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

30,000 Miles or 24 Months

30,000 Miles or 24 Months

☐ Replace air conditioner filter (ES 300 ¹ , GS models ⁶ , LS 430)	☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
☐ Replace brake fluid	☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
☐ Replace engine air filter	☐ Rotate tires
☐ Replace engine coolant	☐ Road test vehicle
☐ Inspect the following:	
___ Ball joints and dust covers	___ Fuel lines and connections, fuel
___ Body (see page 113)	tank band and fuel tank vapor
___ Brake lines and hoses	vent system hoses
___ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs	___ Fuel tank cap gasket
___ Differential oil	___ Rack and pinion assembly
___ Drive shaft boots	___ Steering linkage and boots
___ Exhaust pipes and mountings	___ Transmission fluid

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:³

- ☐ Inspect nuts and bolts on chassis and body
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (IS 300)⁴
- ☐ Replace differential oil⁷

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

- ¹ If equipped.
- ² Do not replace if replaced at 15,000 miles/12 months.
- ³ See page 86 to determine if your vehicle requires these maintenance items.
- ⁴ Only if vehicle is operated primarily on unpaved or dusty roads.
- ⁵ Do not replace if replaced at 20,000 miles/16 months.
- ⁶ Do not replace if replaced at 22,500 miles/18 months.
- ⁷ Only if vehicle is operated primarily while towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

5,000-Mile Maintenance Intervals

7,500-Mile Maintenance Intervals

To determine the appropriate maintenance interval for your vehicle, see page 85.

35,000 Miles or 28 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:²

- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ___ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ___ Engine air filter
 - ___ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ___ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ___ Drive shaft boots
 - ___ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

40,000 Miles or 32 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models³, LS 430)
- ☐ Road test vehicle
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:²

- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (IS 300)⁴
- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ___ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ___ Engine air filter
 - ___ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ___ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ___ Drive shaft boots
 - ___ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

37,500 Miles or 30 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models)
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

45,000 Miles or 36 Months

45,000 Miles or 36 Months

- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (ES 300, GS models, IS 300)⁵
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle
- ☐ Inspect the following:

___ Ball joints and dust covers	___ Drive shaft boots
___ Body (see page 114)	___ Exhaust pipes and mountings
___ Brake lines and hoses	___ Rack and pinion assembly
___ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs	___ Steering linkage and boots
___ Differential oil	

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:²

- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect nuts and bolts on chassis and body
- ☐ Replace differential oil⁶

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

¹ If equipped.

² See page 86 to determine if your vehicle requires these maintenance items.

³ Do not replace if replaced at 37,500 miles/30 months.

⁴ Only if vehicle is operated primarily on unpaved or dusty roads.

⁵ Do not replace if replaced at 40,000 miles/32 months.

⁶ Only if vehicle is operated primarily while towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

5,000-Mile Maintenance Intervals

7,500-Mile Maintenance Intervals

To determine the appropriate maintenance interval for your vehicle, see page 85.

50,000 Miles or 40 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models², LS 430)
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:³

- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (IS 300)⁴
- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ☐ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ☐ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ☐ Drive shaft boots
 - ☐ Engine air filter
 - ☐ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ☐ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

55,000 Miles or 44 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:³

- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ☐ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ☐ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ☐ Drive shaft boots
 - ☐ Engine air filter
 - ☐ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ☐ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

52,500 Miles or 42 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models)⁵
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

60,000 Miles or 48 Months

60,000 Miles or 48 Months

☐ Replace air conditioner filter (ES 300 ¹ , GS models ⁶ , LS 430) ☐ Replace brake fluid ☐ Replace engine air filter ☐ Replace engine coolant ☐ Inspect the following: ___ Ball joints and dust covers ___ Body (see page 115) ___ Brake lines and hoses ___ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs ___ Differential oil ___ Drive belts ___ Drive shaft boots ___ Engine valves	☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter ☐ Replace spark plugs (GS 300, IS 300) ⁷ ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts ☐ Rotate tires ☐ Road test vehicle ___ Exhaust pipes and mountings ___ Fuel lines and connections, fuel tank band and fuel tank vapor vent system hoses ___ Fuel tank cap gasket ___ Rack and pinion assembly ___ Steering linkage and boots ___ Transmission fluid

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:³

☐ Inspect nuts and bolts on chassis and body ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (IS 300) ⁴	☐ Replace differential oil ⁸ ☐ Replace transmission fluid ⁸

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

- ¹ If equipped.
- ² Do not replace if replaced at 45,000 miles/36 months.
- ³ See page 86 to determine if your vehicle requires these maintenance items.
- ⁴ Only if vehicle is operated primarily on unpaved or dusty roads.
- ⁵ Do not replace if replaced at 50,000 miles/40 months.
- ⁶ Do not replace if replaced at 52,500 miles/42 months.
- ⁷ Required under the terms of the Emission Control Warranty.
- ⁸ Only if vehicle is operated primarily while towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

5,000-Mile Maintenance Intervals

7,500-Mile Maintenance Intervals

To determine the appropriate maintenance interval for your vehicle, see page 85.

65,000 Miles or 52 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:²

- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ☐ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ☐ Engine air filter
 - ☐ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ☐ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

70,000 Miles or 56 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models³, LS 430)
- ☐ Road test vehicle
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:²

- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (IS 300)⁴
- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ☐ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ☐ Engine air filter
 - ☐ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ☐ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ☐ Drive shaft boots
 - ☐ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

67,500 Miles or 54 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models, IS 300⁵)
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

75,000 Miles or 60 Months**75,000 Miles or 60 Months**

- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (ES 300, GS models⁶)
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle
- ☐ Inspect the following:

☐ Ball joints and dust covers	☐ Drive belts
☐ Body (see page 116)	☐ Drive shaft boots
☐ Brake lines and hoses	☐ Exhaust pipes and mountings
☐ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs	☐ Rack and pinion assembly
☐ Differential oil	☐ Steering linkage and boots

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:²

- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect nuts and bolts on chassis and body
- ☐ Replace differential oil⁷

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

- ¹ If equipped.
- ² See page 86 to determine if your vehicle requires these maintenance items.
- ³ Do not replace if replaced at 67,500 miles/54 months.
- ⁴ Only if vehicle is operated primarily on unpaved or dusty roads.
- ⁵ Do not replace if replaced at 60,000 miles/48 months.
- ⁶ Do not replace if replaced at 70,000 miles/56 months.
- ⁷ Only if vehicle is operated primarily while towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

5,000-Mile Maintenance Intervals

7,500-Mile Maintenance Intervals

To determine the appropriate maintenance interval for your vehicle, see page 85.

80,000 Miles or 64 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models², LS 430)
- ☐ Road test vehicle
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:³

- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (IS 300)⁴
- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ☐ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ☐ Engine air filter
 - ☐ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ☐ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ☐ Drive shaft boots
 - ☐ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

85,000 Miles or 68 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:³

- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ☐ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ☐ Engine air filter
 - ☐ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ☐ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ☐ Drive shaft boots
 - ☐ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

82,500 Miles or 66 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models)⁵
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

90,000 Miles or 72 Months

90,000 Miles or 72 Months

☐ Replace air conditioner filter (ES 300 ¹ , GS models ⁶ , IS 300, LS 430)	☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
☐ Replace brake fluid	☐ Replace timing belt
☐ Replace engine air filter	☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
☐ Replace engine coolant	☐ Rotate tires
☐ Inspect the following:	☐ Road test vehicle
___ Ball joints and dust covers	___ Fuel lines and connections, fuel
___ Body (see page 117)	tank band and fuel tank vapor
___ Brake lines and hoses	vent system hoses
___ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs	___ Fuel tank cap gasket
___ Differential oil	___ Rack and pinion assembly
___ Drive belts	___ Steering linkage and boots
___ Drive shaft boots	___ Transmission fluid
___ Exhaust pipes and mountings	

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:³

- ☐ Inspect nuts and bolts on chassis and body
- ☐ Replace differential oil⁷

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

- ¹ If equipped.
- ² Do not replace if replaced at 75,000 miles/60 months.
- ³ See page 86 to determine if your vehicle requires these maintenance items.
- ⁴ Only if vehicle is operated primarily on unpaved or dusty roads.
- ⁵ Do not replace if replaced at 80,000 miles/64 months.
- ⁶ Do not replace if replaced at 82,500 miles/66 months.
- ⁷ Only if vehicle is operated primarily while towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

5,000-Mile Maintenance Intervals

7,500-Mile Maintenance Intervals

To determine the appropriate maintenance interval for your vehicle, see page 85.

95,000 Miles or 76 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:²

- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ☐ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ☐ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ☐ Drive shaft boots
 - ☐ Engine air filter
 - ☐ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ☐ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

100,000 Miles or 80 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models³, LS 430)
- ☐ Road test vehicle
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:²

- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (IS 300)⁴
- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ☐ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ☐ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ☐ Drive shaft boots
 - ☐ Engine air filter
 - ☐ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ☐ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

97,500 Miles or 78 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models)
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

105,000 Miles or 84 Months**105,000 Miles or 84 Months**

- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (ES 300¹, GS models⁵)
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle
- ☐ Inspect the following:

☐ Ball joints and dust covers	☐ Drive belts
☐ Body	☐ Drive shaft boots
☐ Brake lines and hoses	☐ Exhaust pipes and mountings
☐ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs	☐ Rack and pinion assembly
☐ Differential oil	☐ Steering linkage and boots

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:²

- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect nuts and bolts on chassis and body
- ☐ Replace differential oil⁶

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

¹ If equipped.² See page 86 to determine if your vehicle requires these maintenance items.³ Do not replace if replaced at 97,500 miles/78 months.⁴ Only if vehicle is operated primarily on unpaved or dusty roads.⁵ Do not replace if replaced at 100,00 miles/80 months.⁶ Only if vehicle is operated primarily while towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

5,000-Mile Maintenance Intervals

7,500-Mile Maintenance Intervals

To determine the appropriate maintenance interval for your vehicle, see page 85.

110,000 Miles or 88 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models², LS 430)
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:³

- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (IS 300)⁴
- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ☐ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ☐ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ☐ Drive shaft boots
 - ☐ Engine air filter
 - ☐ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ☐ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

115,000 Miles or 92 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:³

- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ☐ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ☐ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ☐ Drive shaft boots
 - ☐ Engine air filter
 - ☐ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ☐ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

112,500 Miles or 90 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models, IS 300)⁵
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

120,000 Miles or 96 Months

120,000 Miles or 96 Months

☐ Replace air conditioner filter (ES 300 ¹ , GS models, LS 430) ☐ Replace brake fluid ☐ Replace engine air filter ☐ Replace engine coolant ☐ Inspect the following: ___ Ball joints and dust covers ___ Body ___ Brake lines and hoses ___ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs ___ Differential oil ___ Drive belts ___ Drive shaft boots ___ Engine valves	☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter ☐ Replace spark plugs ⁶ ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts ☐ Rotate tires ☐ Road test vehicle ___ Exhaust pipes and mountings ___ Fuel lines and connections, fuel tank band and fuel tank vapor vent system hoses ___ Fuel tank cap gasket ___ Rack and pinion assembly ___ Steering linkage and boots ___ Transmission fluid

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:³

☐ Inspect nuts and bolts on chassis and body ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (IS 300) ⁴	☐ Replace differential oil ⁷ ☐ Replace transmission fluid ⁷

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

- ¹ If equipped.
- ² Do not replace if replaced at 105,000 miles/84 months.
- ³ See page 86 to determine if your vehicle requires these maintenance items.
- ⁴ Only if vehicle is operated primarily on unpaved or dusty roads.
- ⁵ Do not replace if replaced at 110,000 miles/88 months.
- ⁶ Required under the terms of the Emission Control Warranty.
- ⁷ Only if vehicle is operated primarily while towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

5,000-Mile Maintenance Intervals

7,500-Mile Maintenance Intervals

To determine the appropriate maintenance interval for your vehicle, see page 85.

125,000 Miles or 100 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:²

- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ___ Ball joints and dust covers ___ Engine air filter
 - ___ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs ___ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ___ Drive shaft boots ___ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

130,000 Miles or 104 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹ ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models³, LS 430) ☐ Road test vehicle
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:²

- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (IS 300)⁴
- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ___ Ball joints and dust covers ___ Engine air filter
 - ___ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs ___ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ___ Drive shaft boots ___ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

127,500 Miles or 102 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models)
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

135,000 Miles or 108 Months**135,000 Miles or 108 Months**

- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (ES 300¹, GS models⁵, IS 300⁵)
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle
- ☐ Inspect the following:

☐ Ball joints and dust covers	☐ Drive belts
☐ Body	☐ Drive shaft boots
☐ Brake lines and hoses	☐ Exhaust pipes and mountings
☐ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs	☐ Rack and pinion assembly
☐ Differential oil	☐ Steering linkage and boots

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:²

- ☐ Inspect engine air filter
- ☐ Inspect nuts and bolts on chassis and body
- ☐ Replace differential oil⁶

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

¹ If equipped.

² See page 86 to determine if your vehicle requires these maintenance items.

³ Do not replace if replaced at 127,500 miles/102 months.

⁴ Only if vehicle is operated primarily on unpaved or dusty roads.

⁵ Do not replace if replaced at 130,000 miles/104 months.

⁶ Only if vehicle is operated primarily while towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE LOG

5,000-Mile Maintenance Intervals

7,500-Mile Maintenance Intervals

To determine the appropriate maintenance interval for your vehicle, see page 85.

140,000 Miles or 112 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models², LS 430)
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:³

- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (IS 300)⁴
- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ___ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ___ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ___ Drive belts
 - ___ Drive shaft boots
 - ___ Engine air filter
 - ___ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ___ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

145,000 Miles or 116 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:³

- ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts
- ☐ Inspect the following:
 - ___ Ball joints and dust covers
 - ___ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
 - ___ Drive shaft boots
 - ___ Engine air filter
 - ___ Nuts and bolts on chassis and body
 - ___ Steering linkage and boots

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

142,500 Miles or 114 Months

- ☐ Inspect air conditioner filter (ES 300)¹
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (GS models)⁵
- ☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter
- ☐ Rotate tires
- ☐ Road test vehicle

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

150,000 Miles or 120 Months

150,000 Miles or 120 Months

☐ Replace air conditioner filter (ES 300 ¹ , GS models ⁶ , LS 430) ☐ Replace brake fluid ☐ Replace engine air filter ☐ Replace engine coolant ☐ Inspect the following: ___ Ball joints and dust covers ___ Body ___ Brake lines and hoses ___ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs ___ Differential oil ___ Drive belts ___ Drive shaft boots ___ Exhaust pipes and mountings	☐ Replace engine oil and oil filter ☐ Re-torque drive shaft flange bolts ☐ Rotate tires ☐ Road test vehicle ___ Fuel lines and connections, fuel tank band and fuel tank vapor vent system hoses ___ Fuel tank cap gasket ___ Rack and pinion assembly ___ Steering linkage and boots ___ Transmission fluid

Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:³

- ☐ Inspect nuts and bolts on chassis and body
- ☐ Replace air conditioner filter (IS 300)⁴
- ☐ Replace differential oil⁷

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____

¹ If equipped.

² Do not replace if replaced at 135,000 miles/108 months.

³ See page 86 to determine if your vehicle requires these maintenance items.

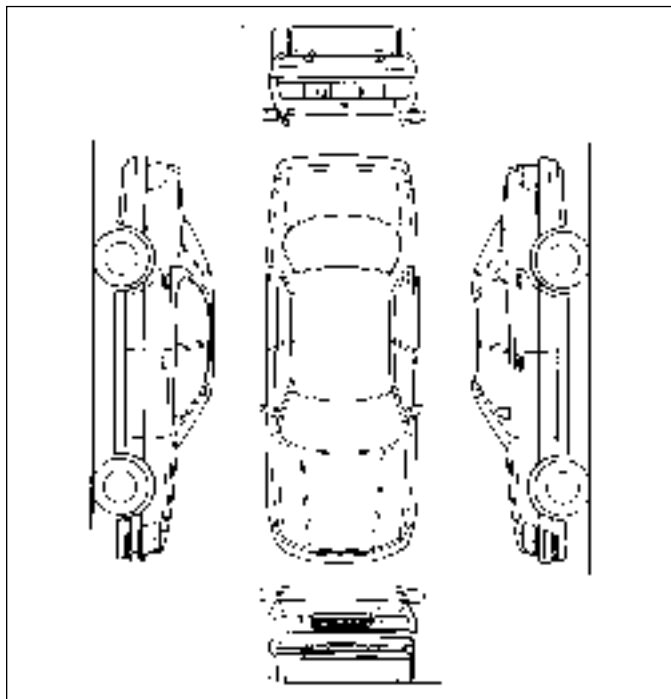
⁴ Only if vehicle is operated primarily on unpaved or dusty roads.

⁵ Do not replace if replaced at 140,000 miles/112 months.

⁶ Do not replace if replaced at 142,500 miles/114 months.

⁷ Only if vehicle is operated primarily while towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier.

BODY INSPECTION LOG



Technician: Indicate where attention is needed by marking "x" in appropriate spots on diagram.

15,000 Miles or 12 Months

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

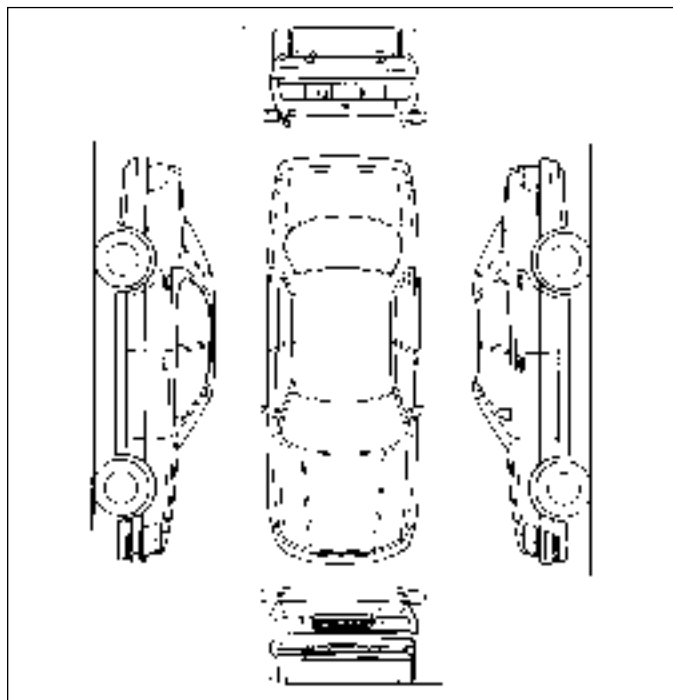
Mileage: _____

30,000 Miles or 24 Months

Dealer Service Verification

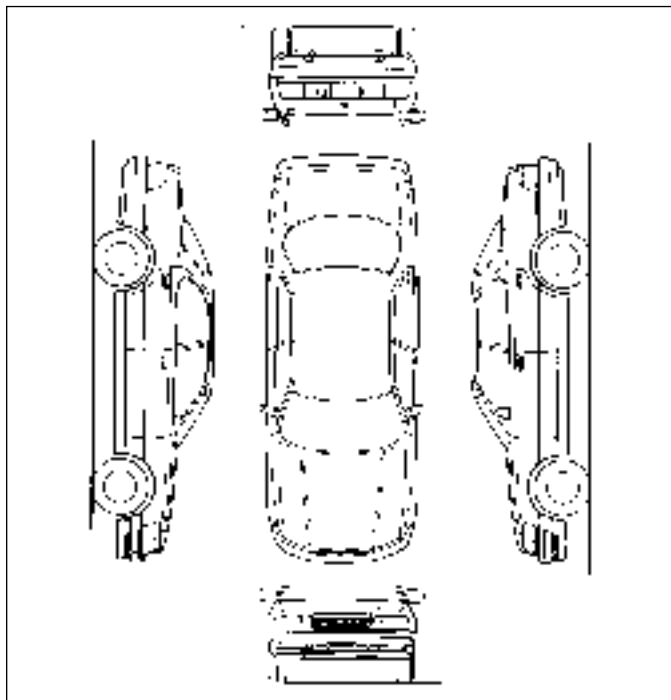
Date: _____

Mileage: _____



Technician: Indicate where attention is needed by marking "x" in appropriate spots on diagram.

BODY INSPECTION LOG



Technician: Indicate where attention is needed by marking "x" in appropriate spots on diagram.

45,000 Miles or 36 Months

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

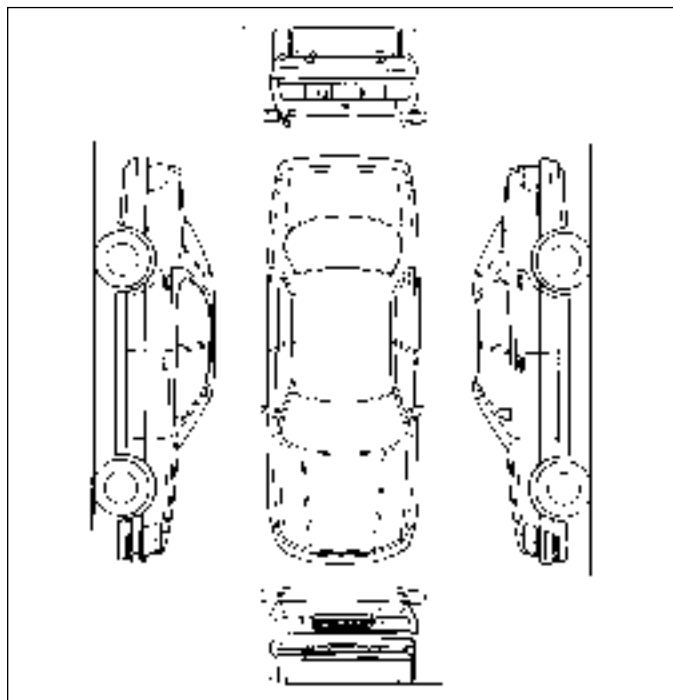
Mileage: _____

60,000 Miles or 48 Months

Dealer Service Verification

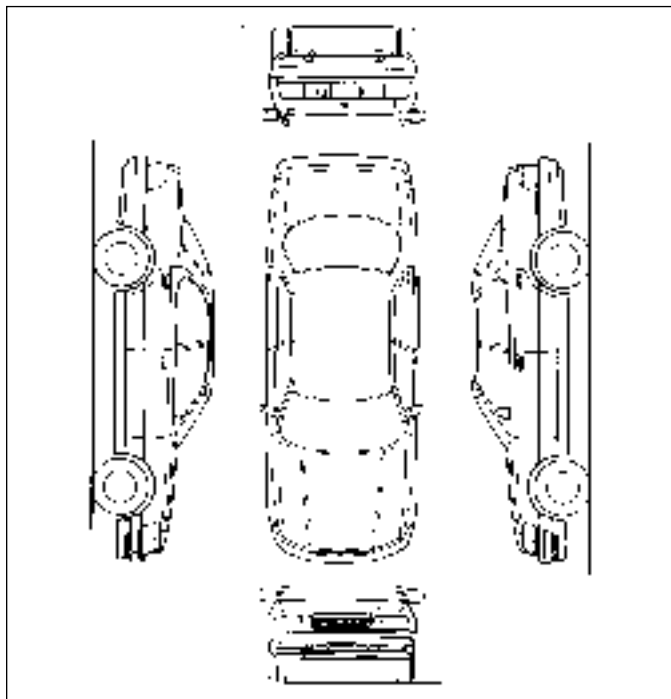
Date: _____

Mileage: _____



Technician: Indicate where attention is needed by marking "x" in appropriate spots on diagram.

BODY INSPECTION LOG



Technician: Indicate where attention is needed by marking "x" in appropriate spots on diagram.

75,000 Miles or 60 Months

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

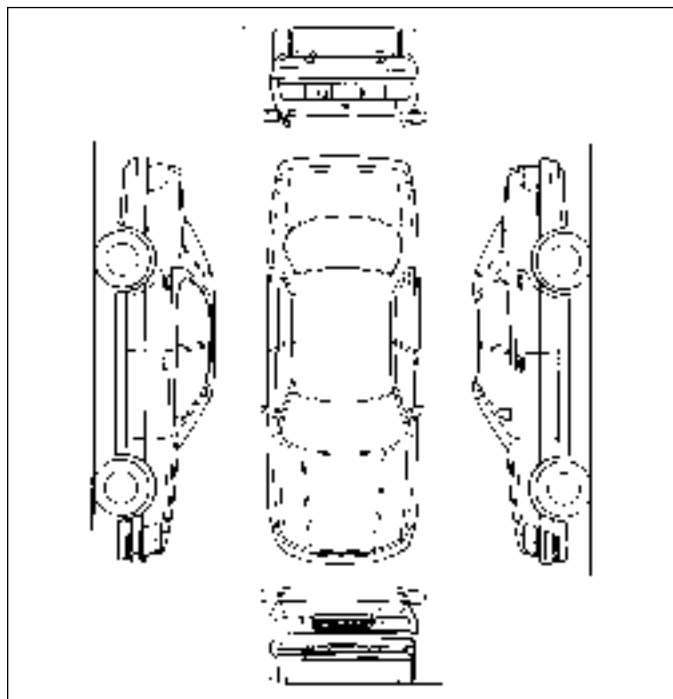
Mileage: _____

90,000 Miles or 72 Months

Dealer Service Verification

Date: _____

Mileage: _____



Technician: Indicate where attention is needed by marking "x" in appropriate spots on diagram.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION

Model _____

Body style _____

In-service date _____

Mileage at delivery _____

Selling dealership _____

Selling dealership phone number _____

Key number _____

Vehicle identification number _____

This image shows a blank sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

[illegible]

Owner Information Change Form

Check one:

- ☐ Same owner, name and/or address changed
- ☐ Same owner, additional driver who should receive product/safety updates
- ☐ New owner, purchased vehicle used from a Lexus dealership on this date: _____
- ☐ New owner, purchased vehicle used from other than a Lexus dealership on this date: _____

FBC

Vehicle identification number (required to process change)

Today's date: ____ Mo. ____ Day ____ Year

☐ Mr. ☐ Mrs. ☐ Ms. ☐ Miss ☐ Dr.

First name M.I. Last name

Company name

Check here if
address below
is for company: ☐

Street address or P.O. Box Apt. or suite number

City State Zip code

Home phone number Work phone number Extension

Social Security Number
(optional; for Lexus customer reference only) E-mail address: _____

If your name or address has changed or if you purchased your Lexus as a used vehicle, please complete and mail one of the attached cards, even if your warranty coverage has expired. This will enable Lexus to contact you with important product or safety updates concerning your vehicle. If there is no longer a card attached, please call the Lexus Customer Satisfaction Department at (800) 255-3987.

This information is obtained solely for the use of Lexus Division, Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. Lexus occasionally sends special promotional offers to registered owners. Check here if you prefer not to receive these offers. ☐





NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED
IN THE
UNITED STATES



BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST-CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 449 TORRANCE, CA

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY THE ADDRESSEE

LEXUS DIVISION
L202
ATTN: CUSTOMER SATISFACTION
PO BOX 2991
TORRANCE CA 90509-9975



Owner Information Change Form

If your name or address has changed or if you purchased your Lexus as a used vehicle, please complete and mail one of the attached cards, even if your warranty coverage has expired. This will enable Lexus to contact you with important product or safety updates concerning your vehicle. If there is no longer a card attached, please call the Lexus Customer Satisfaction Department at (800) 255-3987.

Check one:

- ☐ Same owner, name and/or address changed
- ☐ Same owner, additional driver who should receive product/safety updates
- ☐ New owner, purchased vehicle used from a Lexus dealership on this date: _____
- ☐ New owner, purchased vehicle used from other than a Lexus dealership on this date: _____

FBC

Vehicle identification number (required to process change)

Today's date: ____ Mo. ____ Day ____ Year

☐ Mr. ☐ Mrs. ☐ Ms. ☐ Miss ☐ Dr.

First name M.I. Last name

Company name

Check here if
address below
is for company: ☐

Street address or P.O. Box Apt. or suite number

City State Zip code

Home phone number

Work phone number Extension

Social Security Number
(optional; for Lexus customer reference only)

E-mail address: _____

This information is obtained solely for the use of Lexus Division, Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. Lexus occasionally sends special promotional offers to registered owners. Check here if you prefer not to receive these offers. ☐



You have purchased one of the finest vehicles built in the world today, and it is backed by one of the finest warranties in the industry. This excellent warranty coverage demonstrates not only our confidence in Lexus vehicles, but also our commitment to every Lexus customer. We're dedicated to ensuring that you enjoy exceptional quality, dependability and peace of mind throughout your ownership experience.

To further demonstrate our commitment to our customers' satisfaction, occasionally we may establish a special policy adjustment to pay for specific repairs that are no longer covered by warranty. When we establish such a policy adjustment, we mail details to all applicable owners on record. That's why it is important to send in the card at the back of this booklet if you change your address or if you have purchased your Lexus from a previous owner.

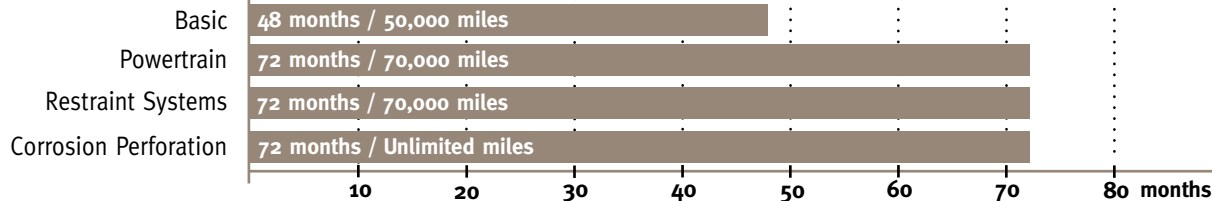
You've made a wise decision to purchase a Lexus. Your vehicle delivers world-class luxury and performance, along with an unparalleled commitment from

Lexus to ensuring your satisfaction. You can be confident — as we are — that you'll enjoy owning your Lexus as much as you enjoy driving it.

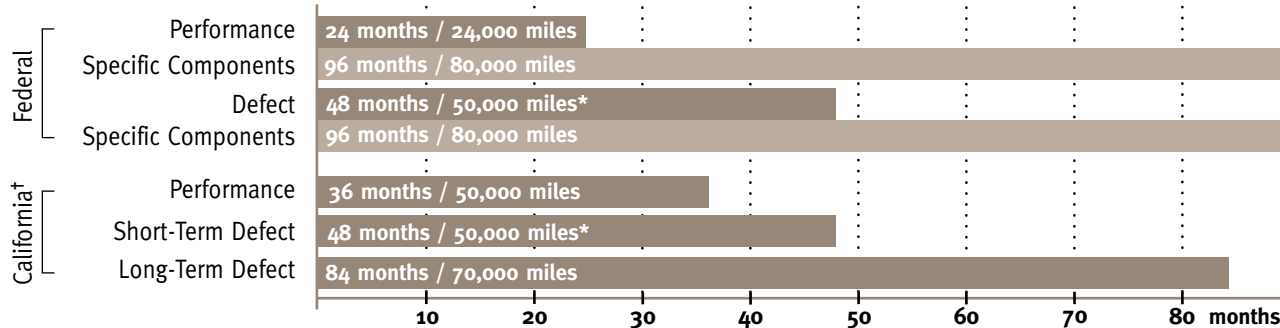
This section of the *Owner's Manual Supplement* describes the terms of Lexus warranty coverage as well as general owner responsibilities. The section entitled "Maintenance Information" beginning on page 82 describes your vehicle's maintenance requirements. Be sure to review this information carefully, since proper maintenance is required to ensure that warranty coverage remains intact.

All warranty information is the latest available at the time of publication and, with the exception of the emission control warranties, is subject to change without notice.

New Vehicle Limited Warranty



Emission Control Warranty



*Specific components may have longer coverage under terms of the Powertrain Warranty.

[†]Also applies to Massachusetts and Vermont vehicles equipped with a California Certified Emission Control System. Vehicles covered by this warranty are also covered by the Federal Emission Control Warranty.

GENERAL WARRANTY PROVISIONS

Who Is the Warrantor

The warrantor for these limited warranties is Lexus, a division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc., 19001 South Western Avenue, Torrance, California 90509-2991, a California corporation.

Which Vehicles Are Covered

These warranties apply to all 2001 model-year Lexus vehicles registered and normally operated in the United States, U.S. territories and Canada. Warranty coverage is automatically transferred at no cost to subsequent vehicle owners.

Multiple Warranty Conditions

This booklet contains warranty terms and conditions that may vary depending on the part covered. A warranty for specific parts or systems, such as the Powertrain Warranty or Emission Performance Warranty, is governed by the coverage set forth in that warranty as well as the General Warranty Provisions.

When Warranty Begins

The warranty period begins on the vehicle's in-service date, which is the first date the vehicle is either delivered to an ultimate purchaser, leased, or used as a company car or demonstrator.

Repairs Made at No Charge

Repairs and adjustments covered by these warranties are made at no charge for parts and labor.

Parts Replacement

Any needed parts replacement will be made using new or remanufactured parts. The decision whether a part should be repaired or replaced will be made by the servicing Lexus dealership and/or Lexus. Parts scheduled to be replaced as required maintenance are warranted until their first replacement only.

Note: Lexus remanufactured parts meet or exceed all factory standards for safety, quality and reliability.

Limitations

The performance of necessary repairs and adjustments is the exclusive remedy under these warranties or any implied warranties. Lexus does not authorize any person to create for it any other obligation or liability in connection with this vehicle.

Any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose is limited to the duration of these written warranties. Some states do not allow restrictions on how long an implied warranty lasts, so this limitation may not apply to you.

Your Rights Under State Law

These warranties give you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

WHAT IS COVERED AND HOW LONG

Basic Warranty

This warranty covers repairs and adjustments needed to correct defects in materials or workmanship of any part supplied by Lexus, subject to the exceptions indicated under “What Is Not Covered” on pages 19–20.

Coverage is for 48 months or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first, with the exception of wheel alignment and wheel balancing, which are covered for 12 months or 20,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

Powertrain Warranty

This warranty covers repairs needed to correct defects in materials or workmanship of any component listed here and supplied by Lexus, subject to the exceptions indicated under “What Is Not Covered” on pages 19–20.

Coverage is for 72 months or 70,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

Engine

Cylinder block and head and all internal parts, intake manifold, exhaust manifold, timing belt and cover,

flywheel, oil pan, water pump, fuel pump, engine mounts, engine control computer, seals and gaskets.

Transmission and Transaxle

Case and all internal parts, torque converter, clutch cover, mounts, engine control computer, seals and gaskets.

Front-Wheel Drive System

Drive shaft, axle, hub, bearings, seals and gaskets.

Rear-Wheel Drive System

Differential carrier assembly, drive shaft, axle carrier, axle case, axle bearing, axle shaft, seals and gaskets.

Corrosion Perforation Warranty

This warranty covers repair or replacement of any original body panel that develops perforation from corrosion (rust-through), subject to the exceptions indicated under “What Is Not Covered” on pages 19–20.

Coverage is for 72 months, regardless of mileage.

For information on how to protect your vehicle from corrosion, see the section entitled “Service Procedures and Specifications – Body” in the *Owner's Manual*.

Restraint Systems Warranty

This warranty covers repairs needed to correct defects in materials or workmanship of any seatbelt or air bag system supplied by Lexus, subject to the exceptions indicated under “What Is Not Covered” on pages 19–20.

Coverage is for 72 months or 70,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

For vehicles sold and registered in Kansas, the warranty for seatbelts and related components is 10 years, regardless of mileage.

Towing

When your vehicle is inoperable due to failure of a warranted part, towing service to the nearest authorized Lexus dealership is covered.

WHAT IS NOT COVERED

This warranty does not cover damage or failures resulting directly or indirectly from any of the following:

- Fire, accidents or theft
- Abuse or negligence
- Misuse — for example, racing or overloading
- Improper repairs
- Alteration or tampering, including installation of non-Genuine Lexus Accessories
- Lack of or improper maintenance, including use of fluids other than those specified in the *Owner's Manual*
- Installation of non-Genuine Lexus Parts
- Airborne chemicals, tree sap, road debris (including stone chips), rail dust, salt, hail, floods, wind storms, lightning and other environmental conditions
- Water contamination

NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY

This warranty also does not cover the following:

Tires

Tires are covered by a separate warranty provided by the tire manufacturer. See pages 34–78.

Normal Wear and Tear

Noise, vibration, cosmetic conditions and other deterioration caused by normal wear and tear.

Maintenance Expense*

Normal maintenance services such as engine tune-ups; replacement of fluids and filters; lubrication; cleaning and polishing; replacement of spark plugs and fuses; and replacement of worn wiper blades, brake pads/linings and clutch linings.

Vehicles With Altered Odometer

Failure of a vehicle on which the odometer has been altered so that actual vehicle mileage cannot be readily determined.

Vehicles With Unknown Vehicle Identification Number

Any vehicle for which the original factory-assigned vehicle identification number cannot be determined.

Salvage or Total-Loss Vehicles

Any vehicle that has ever been issued a “salvage” title or similar title under any state’s law; or has ever been declared a “total loss” or equivalent by a financial institution or insurer, such as by payment for a claim in lieu of repairs because the cost of repairs exceeded the cash value of the vehicle. This exclusion does not apply to the emission control warranties.

Incidental Damages

Incidental or consequential damages associated with a vehicle failure. Such damages include but are not limited to inconvenience; the cost of transportation, telephone calls and lodging; the loss of personal or commercial property; and the loss of pay or revenue.

*Lexus provides the first two scheduled maintenance services at no charge. See page 4 for details.

Disclaimer of Extra Expenses and Damages

The performance of necessary repairs and adjustments is the exclusive remedy under this warranty or any implied warranty. Lexus does not authorize any person to create for it any other obligation or liability in connection with this vehicle. Lexus shall not be liable for incidental or consequential damages resulting from breach of this written warranty or any implied warranty.

Any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose is limited to the duration of this written warranty, except in states where this limitation is not allowed.

DISPUTE RESOLUTION

If a dispute arises regarding your warranty coverage, please follow the steps described under “If You Need Assistance” on pages 8–10. Please note that you must see BBB AUTO LINE before seeking remedies through a court action pursuant to the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act. You may also be required to use BBB AUTO LINE before seeking remedies under the “Lemon Laws” of your state. For the requirements applicable to your state, see the appropriate page of the *Owner's Manual Supplement – Lemon Law Information* booklet located in your glove box.

WHAT IS COVERED AND HOW LONG

Emission Defect Warranty

Lexus warrants that your vehicle:

- Was designed, built and equipped to conform at the time of sale with applicable federal emissions standards.
- Is free from defects in materials and workmanship that may cause the vehicle to fail to meet these standards.

Federal regulations require that this warranty be in effect for two years or 24,000 miles from the vehicle's in-service date, whichever occurs first. However, under the terms of the Basic Warranty, Lexus provides coverage of four years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first. Specific components may have longer coverage under the terms of the Powertrain Warranty. Additionally, components marked "8/80" in the parts list on pages 23–24 have coverage of eight years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

Emission Performance Warranty

Some states and localities have established vehicle inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs to encourage proper vehicle maintenance. If an EPA-approved I/M program is in force in your area, you are eligible for Emission Performance Warranty coverage.

Under the terms of the Emission Performance Warranty and federal regulations, Lexus will make all necessary repairs if both of the following occur:

- Your vehicle fails to meet applicable emissions standards as determined by an EPA-approved emissions test.
- This failure results or will result in some penalty to you — such as a fine or denial of the right to use your vehicle — under local, state or federal law.

This warranty is in effect for two years or 24,000 miles from the vehicle's in-service date, whichever occurs first. Additionally, components marked "8/80" in the parts list on pages 23–24 have coverage of eight years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

WHAT IS NOT COVERED

These warranty obligations do not apply to failures or noncompliance caused by:

- The use of replacement parts not certified in accordance with aftermarket parts certification regulations.
- The use of replacement parts not equivalent in quality or design to original equipment parts.

Provisions under the “What Is Not Covered” section of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty also apply to this warranty.

WARRANTY PARTS LIST

Air/Fuel Metering System

- Air/fuel ratio feedback control system
- Cold start enrichment system
- Deceleration control system
- Electronic fuel injection system components
 - Airflow sensor
 - Engine control module (8/80)
 - Throttle body
 - Other components

Air Induction System

- Intake manifold and intake air surge tank

Air Injection System

- Air injection manifold
- Air injection pump
- Airflow control valves

8/80 = Covered for eight years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

FEDERAL EMISSION CONTROL WARRANTY

Catalyst System

- Catalytic converter and protector (8/80)
- Constricted fuel filler neck
- Exhaust manifold
- Exhaust pipe (manifold to catalyst and/or catalyst to catalyst)

Evaporative Control System

- Charcoal canister
- Fuel filler cap
- Fuel tank
- Vapor liquid separator

Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System

- EGR gas temperature sensor
- EGR valve
- Associated parts

Ignition System

- Distributor and internal parts
- Ignition coil and ignitor
- Ignition wires
- Spark plugs*

Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) System

- Oil filler cap
- PCV valve or orifice

Other Parts Used in Above Systems

- Data link connector (8/80)
- Hoses, clamps, fittings, tubing and mounting hardware
- Malfunction indicator light and bulb (8/80)
- Pulleys, belts and idlers
- Sealing gaskets and devices
- Sensors, switches and valves

8/80 = Covered for eight years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

*Warranted until first required maintenance under terms of the California Emission Control Warranty.

MAINTENANCE

You are responsible for performance of the required maintenance indicated in the *Owner's Manual* and this supplement. Lexus will not deny a warranty claim solely because you do not have records to show that you maintained your vehicle. However, any failure or noncompliance caused by lack of maintenance is not covered by this warranty.

When maintenance and repairs are paid for by you, these services may be performed by you or by any automotive service provider you choose. Lexus will not deny a warranty claim simply because you used a service provider other than a Lexus dealership for maintenance and repairs. However, any failure or noncompliance caused by improper maintenance or repairs is not covered by this warranty.

REPLACEMENT PARTS

To ensure optimum performance and maintain the quality built into your vehicle's emission control systems, Lexus recommends the use of Genuine Lexus Parts when servicing or repairing the systems.

Warranty coverage is not dependent upon the use of any particular brand of replacement parts and you may elect to use non-Genuine Lexus Parts for maintenance and repairs. However, use of replacement parts that are not equivalent in quality to Genuine Lexus Parts may impair the effectiveness of the emission control systems.

If you use replacement parts that have maintenance or replacement schedules different from those of Genuine Lexus Parts, you must follow the maintenance and replacement schedules for the parts you are using. In addition, you should ensure that such parts are warranted by their manufacturers to be equivalent to Genuine Lexus Parts.

FEDERAL EMISSION CONTROL WARRANTY

**IF YOUR VEHICLE
FAILS AN EMISSIONS TEST**

If your vehicle fails an EPA-approved emissions test, you may make a claim under the Emission Performance Warranty. To do so, take your vehicle to an authorized Lexus dealership and present a copy of the emissions test report. Also, take your maintenance records in case they are needed.

If your claim qualifies for coverage, the dealership will repair your vehicle within 30 days (unless a shorter period is required by law). If your claim is denied, Lexus will notify you in writing of the reason within the same period. If we fail to do so, we will repair your vehicle free of charge. The only exceptions allowed are when you request or agree to a delay, or a delay is caused by factors beyond the control of Lexus or the dealership.

For information on how to obtain service under the Emission Defect Warranty, see page 81, “Obtaining Warranty Service.”

IF YOU HAVE QUESTIONS

If you have questions or concerns about your vehicle’s federal emission warranty coverage, please follow the steps described under “If You Need Assistance” on pages 8–10. In the case of the Emission Performance Warranty, you may also request information from or report complaints to:

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
Vehicle Programs & Compliance Division (6405J)
Attn: Warranty Complaints
401 M Street SW
Washington, D.C. 20460

Vehicles equipped with a California Certified Emission Control System that are registered and operated in California or any state that adopts California emission warranty provisions are also covered by the California Emission Control Warranty (see page 28). Massachusetts and Vermont are the only other states to which the California Emission Control Warranty currently applies.

DEALER CERTIFICATE

We (the dealership) want you to know that at the time your new Lexus vehicle is being delivered:

- 1) On the basis of written notification furnished by Lexus, we have knowledge that the vehicle is covered by an EPA Certificate of Conformity.
- 2) We have visually inspected those emission control devices or portions thereof that are visible without removing or adjusting any components or systems, emissions-related or otherwise. On the basis of this inspection, there are no apparent deficiencies in the installation of emission control devices by Lexus. (For purposes of this certificate, "emission control devices" is limited to devices installed on a vehicle for the sole or primary purpose of controlling emissions and which were not in general use before 1968.)
- 3) We have performed all emission control system preparations required by Lexus prior to the sale of the vehicle as set forth in Lexus' current pre-delivery service manual.
- 4) Except as may be provided in Paragraph 5, if this vehicle fails an EPA-approved emissions test within three months or 4,000 miles (whichever comes first) of delivery to the ultimate purchaser, and the vehicle

has been maintained and used in accordance with the written instructions for proper maintenance and use, Lexus will remedy the non-conformity free of charge under the terms of the Emission Performance Warranty.

- 5) If vehicle was used as a company car or demonstrator, check box and complete the following:

☐ The vehicle with which this statement is delivered was placed into service as a company car or demonstrator prior to delivery. The Emission Performance Warranty period commenced on the date the vehicle was first placed into service, which was _____.

Month Day Year

Note: The dealership makes no representation or warranty that the emission control system or any part thereof is without defect or that the system will perform properly. The Emission Performance Warranty referred to in Paragraph 4 and furnished with the vehicle is solely that of the manufacturer.

This statement is required by section 207 of the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7541) and the EPA regulations issued thereunder.

Dealership name

YOUR WARRANTY RIGHTS AND OBLIGATIONS

The California Air Resources Board (CARB) and Lexus are pleased to explain the emission control system warranty for your 2001 vehicle. In California, new motor vehicles must be designed, built and equipped to meet the state's stringent anti-smog standards. CARB regulations require that Lexus must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the time periods indicated on this page, provided there has been no abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of your vehicle.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the fuel injection system, ignition system, catalytic converter and engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors and other emissions-related assemblies.

Where a warrantable condition exists, Lexus will repair your vehicle at no cost to you, including diagnosis, parts and labor.

MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY COVERAGE

- 1) For three years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first:
 - If your vehicle fails a smog-check test, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Lexus to ensure that your vehicle passes the test. This is your Emission Control System **PERFORMANCE WARRANTY**.
 - If any emissions-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Lexus. This is your **SHORT-TERM Emission Control System DEFECT WARRANTY**. Covered parts are listed on pages 23–24.
Note: Under the terms of the Basic Warranty, Lexus provides coverage of four years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first. Specific components may have longer coverage under the terms of the Powertrain Warranty.
- 2) For seven years or 70,000 miles, whichever occurs first:
 - If an emissions-related part listed on page 30 is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Lexus. This is your **LONG-TERM Emission Control System DEFECT WARRANTY**.

OWNER'S WARRANTY RESPONSIBILITIES

You are responsible for performance of the required maintenance indicated in the *Owner's Manual* and this supplement. Lexus recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle, but Lexus cannot deny warranty coverage solely for the lack of receipts or your failure to ensure the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to a Lexus dealership as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days.

You should also be aware that Lexus may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance or unapproved modifications.

If you have any questions regarding your warranty rights and responsibilities, you should contact the Lexus Customer Satisfaction Department at (800) 255-3987 or the California Air Resources Board, Mobile Source Control Division, at 9528 Telstar Avenue, P.O. Box 8001, El Monte, CA 91734-8001.

WHAT IS NOT COVERED

These warranty obligations do not apply to failures or noncompliance caused by:

- The use of replacement parts not certified in accordance with aftermarket parts certification regulations.
- The use of replacement parts not equivalent in quality or design to original equipment parts.

Provisions under the "What Is Not Covered" section of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty also apply to this warranty.

CALIFORNIA EMISSION CONTROL WARRANTY

PARTS LIST: LONG-TERM EMISSION DEFECT WARRANTY

The parts listed here are covered for seven years or 70,000 miles from the vehicle's in-service date, whichever occurs first.

Air/Fuel Metering System

- Air-fuel ratio sensor on ES 300
- Engine control computer (engine control module)
- Injector on GS 430 and LS 430
- Throttle body

Air Induction System

- Intake manifold and intake air surge tank

Catalyst System

- Catalytic converter (warm-up three-way catalyst)
- Exhaust center pipe on ES 300
- Exhaust front pipe (manifold to catalyst and/or catalyst to catalyst) on ES 300, GS 300, GS 430 and LS 430

- Exhaust manifold
- Exhaust manifold gasket on GS 430 and LS 430
- Right exhaust manifold gasket on ES 300

Evaporative Control System

- Charcoal canister on GS 300 and GS 430
- Fuel tank

Ignition System

- Knock sensor on ES 300, GS 430 and LS 430

MAINTENANCE

You are responsible for performance of the required maintenance indicated in the *Owner's Manual* and this supplement. Lexus will not deny a warranty claim solely because you do not have records to show that you maintained your vehicle. However, any failure or noncompliance caused by lack of maintenance is not covered by this warranty.

When maintenance and repairs are paid for by you, these services may be performed by you or by any automotive service provider you choose. Lexus will not deny a warranty claim simply because you used a service provider other than a Lexus dealership for maintenance and repairs. However, any failure or noncompliance caused by improper maintenance or repairs is not covered by this warranty.

REPLACEMENT PARTS

To ensure optimum performance and maintain the quality built into your vehicle's emission control systems, Lexus recommends the use of Genuine Lexus Parts when servicing or repairing the systems.

Warranty coverage is not dependent upon the use of any particular brand of replacement parts and you may elect to use non-Genuine Lexus Parts for maintenance and repairs. However, use of replacement parts that are not equivalent in quality to Genuine Lexus Parts may impair the effectiveness of the emission control systems.

If you use replacement parts that have maintenance or replacement schedules different from those of Genuine Lexus Parts, you must follow the maintenance and replacement schedules for the parts you are using. In addition, you should ensure that such parts are warranted by their manufacturers to be equivalent to Genuine Lexus Parts.

CALIFORNIA EMISSION CONTROL WARRANTY

**IF YOUR VEHICLE
FAILS A SMOG-CHECK TEST**

If your vehicle fails a smog-check test, you may make a claim under the Emission Performance Warranty. To do so, take your vehicle to an authorized Lexus dealership and present a copy of the smog-check test report. Also, take your maintenance records in case they are needed.

If your claim qualifies for coverage, the dealership will repair your vehicle within 30 days (unless a shorter period is required by law). If your claim is denied, Lexus will notify you in writing of the reason within the same period. If we fail to do so, we will repair your vehicle free of charge. The only exceptions allowed are when you request or agree to a delay, or a delay is caused by factors beyond the control of Lexus or the dealership.

For information on how to obtain service under the Emission Defect Warranty, see page 81, “Obtaining Warranty Service.”

REPAIR DELAYS

If a Lexus dealership is unable to complete repairs on your vehicle within 30 days, you may have the repairs made under Lexus’ provisions for emergency warranty repairs. See page 81 for details.

IF YOU HAVE QUESTIONS

If you have questions or concerns about your vehicle's California emission warranty coverage, please follow the steps described under "If You Need Assistance" on pages 8–10. You may also request information from or report complaints to:

California Air Resources Board
Mobile Source Control Division
P.O. Box 8001
El Monte, CA 91734-8001
(800)242-4450

Vehicles equipped with a California Certified Emission Control System that are registered and operated in California or any state that adopts California emission warranty provisions are covered by this warranty. Massachusetts and Vermont are the only other states to which this warranty currently applies. Vehicles covered by this warranty are also covered by the Federal Emission Control Warranty (see page 22).

TIRE LIMITED WARRANTY

OBTAINING WARRANTY SERVICE

The tires that come as original equipment on your vehicle are warranted by their manufacturer and not Lexus. Please refer to the tire warranty statements on the following pages.

To obtain warranty service for a tire, take the tire to an authorized dealer of the tire manufacturer. (Refer to your local phone directory for dealer locations.) Your Lexus dealer may also be able to assist you in obtaining warranty service from the manufacturer.

For additional warranty information or service assistance, contact the tire manufacturer directly.

ORIGINAL EQUIPMENT TIRE MANUFACTURERS

Bridgestone/Firestone

One Bridgestone Park
Nashville, TN 37214
(800) 847-3272

**Goodyear Dunlop Tires
North America, Ltd.**

P.O. Box 1109
Buffalo, NY 14240
(800) 548-4714

**Goodyear Tire
and Rubber Co.**

1144 East Market Street
Akron, OH 44316
(800) 321-2136

Michelin North America

P.O. Box 19001
Greenville, SC 29602
(800) 847-3435

GENERAL INFORMATION

Eligibility

You are covered under the terms of this warranty for any new Bridgestone/Firestone brand passenger-car, temporary-use spare or light-truck tire bearing the Bridgestone or Firestone name and produced after July 3, 1994 (as indicated by the Department of Transportation identification number) if your tire has been used for non-commercial service only on the vehicle on which it was originally installed.

What Is Covered and How Long

If (a) before there is 2/32 inch of tread depth remaining (i.e., tire is worn down to the top of the built-in indicators in the tread grooves) and (b) before six years from the date of purchase* (or if this is not known, then six years from the date of manufacture) any Bridgestone/Firestone tire covered by this warranty becomes unusable for any reason within the manufacturer's control, such tire

will be replaced with an equivalent Bridgestone/Firestone tire as described on the following pages.

What Is Not Covered

This warranty does not cover tire damage or irregular wear due to:

- Road hazards, including (without limitation) puncture, cut, impact break, stone drill, bruise, bulge, wheel spinning, snag, etc.
- Continued use while run flat or under acute underinflation.
- Improper use or operation, including (without limitation) improper inflation pressure; overloading; use of an improper rim; vehicle misalignment; tire/wheel assembly imbalance or other vehicle conditions, defects or characteristics; worn suspension components; improper mounting or demounting; misuse; misapplication; negligence; tire spinning; tire chain damage; chemical contami-

*Proof of purchase required.

nation; fire or other externally generated heat; water or other material trapped inside the tire during mounting; tire alteration; racing or competition; and improper insertion of sealant, balance or filler materials.

- Improper repair.
- Failure to observe any of the safety and maintenance precautions contained in this manual.

This warranty also does not cover the following:

- Ride disturbance claims submitted after 1/32 inch of treadwear.
- The cost of applicable federal, state and local taxes.
- Tires purchased and normally used outside the United States and Canada.
- Claims for weather/ozone cracking after four years from the date of purchase (proof of purchase required) or, if purchase date is not known, after four years from the date of manufacture.

This warranty is in addition to and/or may be limited by any other applicable written warranty you may have received concerning special tires or situations.

Replacement Price

Radial passenger-car tires adjusted under this warranty will be replaced free of charge during the first 25 percent of treadwear or within the first 12 months of purchase (proof of purchase required), whichever occurs first.

During the free replacement period, mounting and balancing are included free of charge.

To determine replacement price after the free replacement period, the percentage of treadwear is multiplied by the owner-user's regular purchase price. Taxes, mounting, balancing and other service charges are added to this replacement price.

In Canada, the tire will be adjusted by the dealership (subject always to dealer discretion) at a predetermined "adjustment price."

Replacement Warranty

If you receive a replacement tire under this warranty, the tire will be covered by the warranty given for that tire.

Where to Go for Warranty Service

To obtain service under this warranty, contact a Bridgestone/Firestone retailer listed in the Yellow Pages under “Tire Dealers – Retail.”

To obtain warranty service outside the United States and Canada, see your local Bridgestone/Firestone distributor or retailer.

Consumer Rights

This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from state to state and in Canada from province to province.

Conditions and Exclusions

To the extent permitted by law, Bridgestone/Firestone, Inc., disclaims liability for any consequential damages, loss of time, loss of vehicle use or inconvenience.

Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

This warranty applies only to consumers actually using the tire in the United States and Canada. For warranty service outside the United States and Canada, see your local Bridgestone/Firestone distributor or retailer.

Obligations under this policy may not be enlarged or altered by anyone.

Important: In accordance with Federal Law, this warranty has been designated as a “Limited Warranty.” Nothing in this warranty is intended to be a representation that tire failures cannot occur. This warranty is given in the United States by Bridgestone/Firestone, Inc., One Bridgestone Park, Nashville, TN 37214 and in Canada by Bridgestone/Firestone Canada, Inc., 5770 Hurontario Street, Suite 400, Mississauga, Ontario, Canada L5R 3G5.

Owner-User's Obligation

It is the owner-user's obligation to operate tires within tire load and specification limits and at cold air pressures specified by the vehicle manufacturer for load and speed according to individual tire size, type and load capacity. It is also the owner-user's obligation to maintain proper alignment of wheels and to maintain proper balance of tire/wheel assemblies.

In case of adjustment claim, the owner-user must present the tire to a Bridgestone/Firestone retailer; complete and sign the customer section of the Bridgestone/Firestone, Inc., warranty claim form; and pay appropriate replacement price, taxes and service charges.

We strongly recommend that you have your Bridgestone/Firestone retailer inspect your tires any time you notice irregular or uneven treadwear or every 5,000 to 7,500 miles. This service is free.

IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

Any tire, no matter how well constructed, may fail in use as a result of punctures, impact damage, improper inflation, overloading or other conditions resulting from use or misuse. Tire failure may create a risk of property damage, serious personal injury or death. To reduce the risk of tire failure, we strongly recommend that you read and follow all safety information discussed in these pages.

Safety Warning

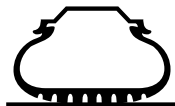
Serious personal injury or death may result from a tire failure. Many tire failures are preceded by vibration, bumps, bulges or irregular wear. If a vibration occurs while driving your vehicle or you notice a bump, bulge or irregular wear, have your tires and vehicle evaluated by a qualified service person.

Tire Inflation

Always keep the vehicle manufacturer's recommended air pressure in all your tires, including the spare. This is an important requirement for tire safety. Your vehicle tire placard or owner's manual will tell you the recommended cold air pressure. On some vehicles, the recommended front and rear tire pressures are different. Your Bridgestone or Firestone retailer will be happy to point this out to you.



Underinflation



Overinflation



Proper Inflation

Safety Warning

Driving on tires with too little air pressure is dangerous. Your tires will get overheated. This can cause a sudden tire failure that could lead to serious personal injury or death.

Underinflation may also:

- Damage the tire, leading to tire failure.
- Adversely affect vehicle handling.
- Reduce tire life.
- Increase fuel consumption.

Safety Warning

Driving on tires with too much air can be dangerous. The tires are more likely to be cut, punctured or broken by sudden impact. Serious personal injury or death could result. Consult your vehicle's tire placard for the recommended inflation and your owner's manual for other tire information.

Safety Warning

Never inflate a tire unless it is secured to the vehicle or a tire-mounting machine. Inflating an unsecured tire is dangerous. If it bursts, it could be hurled into the air with explosive force resulting in serious personal injury or death.

Tips for Safe Tire Inflation

- Check your tire air pressure, including your spare tire, at least once a week and before long trips. Be sure to use an accurate pressure gauge.
- Check your air pressure when the tires are “cold.” The tires are cold when your vehicle has been driven less than a mile at moderate speed or stopped for at least three hours.
- If you must add air when your tires are hot, add four pounds per square inch (psi) (28kPa) above the recommended cold air pressure. Recheck the inflation pressure when the tire is cold.
- Never release air from a hot tire to achieve the recommended cold tire pressure. Normal driving causes tires to run hotter and air pressure to increase. If you release air while your tires are hot, you may dangerously underinflate your tires.
- If your tires lose more than two pounds per square inch (psi) (14kPa) of air pressure per month, the tire, valve or wheel may be damaged. Consult your Bridgestone/Firestone tire dealer for a free inspection.
- Check your spare tire. Consult your vehicle owner’s manual for the correct inflation and use of a temporary-use spare tire.
- Use valve caps to keep valve cores clean and clear of debris, and to help guard against air leakage.

Safety Warning

Driving your vehicle in an overloaded condition is dangerous. Overloading causes excessive heat to build up in your tires. This can lead to sudden tire failure and serious personal injury or death while the tire is overloaded or at some later date.

Tips for Safe Loading

Consult your vehicle tire placard and owner's manual for the vehicle load limits, proper tire inflation and special trailer towing instructions that apply to your vehicle and tires.

Never exceed the maximum load rating stamped on the sidewall of your tire or the maximum vehicle load rating, whichever is less. The maximum vehicle load rating (GVWR) is found on the certification label on the driver's door.

Tire Damage**Safety Warning**

Driving on damaged tires is dangerous. A damaged tire can suddenly fail, causing serious personal injury or death. Have your tires regularly inspected by your Bridgestone/Firestone retailer for damage.

Tips for Spotting Damaged Tires

- After striking anything unusual in the roadway, ask your Bridgestone/Firestone retailer to demount the tire and inspect it for damage. A tire may not have visible signs of damage on the tire surface. Yet the tire may suddenly fail without warning — a day, a week or even months later.
- Inspect your tires for cuts, cracks, splits or bruises in the tread and sidewall areas. Bumps or bulges may indicate a separation within the tire body.

Have your tire inspected by a qualified tire service person. It may be necessary to have the tire removed from the wheel for a complete inspection.

- Inspect your tires for adequate tread depth. When the tire is worn to the built-in indicators at 2/32 inch (1.6 millimeters) or less tread groove depth, or the tire cord or fabric is exposed, the tire is dangerously worn and must be replaced immediately.
- Inspect your tires for uneven wear. Wear on one side of the tread or flat spots in the tread may indicate a problem with the tire or vehicle. Consult your Bridgestone/Firestone retailer.
- Inspect your tire rims also. If you have a bent or cracked rim, it must be replaced.

Tire Repairs

Safety Warning

Driving on an improperly repaired tire is dangerous. An improper repair can cause further damage to the tire. The tire may suddenly fail, causing serious personal injury or death. To be safe, go to your Bridgestone/Firestone retailer for proper tire repairs.

Safety Warning

Before having a tire repaired, tell the Bridgestone/Firestone retailer if you have used an aerosol fixer to inflate/seal the tire. Aerosol fixers may contain a highly volatile gas. Always remove the valve core outdoors away from sources of heat, flame and sparks, and completely deflate the tire before removing it from the rim for repair.

- Never repair a tire with less than 2/32 inch (1.6 millimeters) tread remaining. At this tread depth, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.
- Never repair a tire with a puncture larger than 1/4 inch (6.4 millimeters) in diameter. Such tires cannot be properly repaired and must be replaced.
- Repairs of all tires (radial and non-radial) must be of the plug-and-inside-patch type unless the hole is too small to insert a plug. **Using plugs alone on any type of tire is not a safe repair.**
- Never repair a tire with a puncture or other damage outside the tread area. Such tires cannot be properly repaired and must be replaced.
- Any tire repair done without removing the tire from the rim is improper.
- Tubes, like tires, should be repaired only by a qualified tire service person.
- Never use a tube as a substitute for a proper repair.

Safety Warning

A tire's speed rating is void if the tire is repaired, re-treaded, damaged or abused or otherwise altered from its original condition. Thereafter, it should be treated as a non-speed-rated tire.

**Removing and Replacing Tires on Rims
(Tire Mounting)****Safety Warning**

Always stand well clear of any tire-mounting operation. This is especially important when the service operator inflates the tire. If the tire has been improperly mounted, it may burst with explosive force causing serious personal injury or death. A new valve must be installed in the rim each time a worn-out passenger-car tire is replaced.

Safety Warning

Removing and replacing tires on rims can be dangerous. Attempting to mount tires with improper tools or procedures may result in a tire explosion causing serious personal injury or death. This is a job for your Bridgestone/Firestone retailer or qualified tire service location only.

Serious personal injury or death can result from:

- Failure to select the proper tire and rim. The tire must match the width and diameter requirements of the rim. For example, when mounting 16-inch diameter tires, use only 16-inch diameter rims.
- Failure to inspect both the tire and rim. The rim must be free of cracks, dents, chips and rust. The tire must be free of bead damage, cuts and punctures.

- Failure to follow proper procedures. For proper mounting procedures, consult *Care and Service of Automobile and Light Truck Tires* published by the Rubber Manufacturer's Association.
- Exceeding the maximum bead-seating pressure. The service person must never inflate a tire beyond 40 pounds per square inch (psi) (276kPa) to seat the beads. Be absolutely certain beads are fully seated before adjusting inflation pressure to the level recommended for vehicle operation.

Safety Warning

Never pour or spray any flammable substance into or onto a tire or wheel for any purpose whatsoever.

Tire Mixing

Safety Warning

Driving your vehicle with an improper mix of tires is dangerous. Your car's handling characteristics may be seriously affected. You could have an accident resulting in serious personal injury or death. Consult your owner's manual or Bridgestone/Firestone retailer for the proper tire replacement.



Radial



Diagonal
(Bias)



Belted Bias

Winter Tires

Safety Warning

Winter driving presents special challenges for vehicle mobility. Use of winter tires, studs and chains, while improving traction performance in snow and ice, requires special care with regard to braking, cornering and speed. It is important to drive with care not only on snow and ice, but on dry and wet roads as well.

Braking and Cornering

For front-wheel-drive vehicles, vehicle control problems can be minimized by putting winter tires or studded tires on all four wheel positions.

Tire Speed Rating

When lower-speed-rated winter tires replace higher-speed-rated touring and high-performance all-season radial tires, speed should be reduced accordingly. Follow recommendations in your owner's manual for winter tires, studs and chains. Consult your tire dealer for recommendations on stud usage and seasonal restrictions.

Temporary-Use Spare Tires

Your car may be equipped with a "temporary-use" spare tire. This tire may differ in size and construction from the other tires on your vehicle.

Safety Warning

Check inflation pressure before use. See section entitled "Tire Inflation" on pages 39–40.

Safety Warning

Placing (mounting) your temporary-use tire on a wheel that is not specifically designed for use with the temporary-use tire or placing another type of tire on your temporary-use wheel can be dangerous. Your vehicle's handling characteristics may be seriously affected. You could have an accident resulting in serious personal injury or death. Consult your owner's manual for proper use of your temporary-use spare tire.

High Speed**Safety Warning**

Driving at high speeds is dangerous and can cause a vehicle accident resulting in serious personal injury or death.

Regardless of the speed and handling capabilities of your car and its tires, a **loss of vehicle control** can result from exceeding the maximum speed (a) allowed by law or (b) warranted by traffic, weather, vehicle or road conditions. High-speed driving should be left to trained professionals operating under controlled conditions.

No tire, regardless of its design or speed rating, has unlimited capacity for speed, and a sudden tire failure can occur if a tire's speed limits are exceeded.

Non-speed-rated tires are built for ordinary passenger service and should never be used for high-speed driving. Even speed-rated tires may not be driven at speeds exceeding their maximum actual speed capability.

Tire Speed Ratings

Some tires, especially “touring” or “performance” tires, bear a letter designating the tire’s **design** speed capability. This speed-rating system is intended to allow you to compare the speed capabilities of tires.

When purchasing or replacing speed-rated tires, make sure to:

- Use the rankings in the following chart to compare the speed ratings of all the tires.
- Follow the vehicle manufacturer’s recommendations, if any, concerning the use of speed-rated tires.

To avoid reducing the speed capability of the vehicle, replace a speed-rated tire only with another tire having at least the same speed rating. Remember, it’s the “top speed” of the “slowest” tire on the car that cannot be exceeded without risk of tire failure.

The letter symbols and corresponding **design** speeds are specified on the next page.

BRIDGESTONE/FIRESTONE TIRE LIMITED WARRANTY

Speed-Rating Symbol	Speed Category ¹
M	Up to 81 mph (130 km/h)
Q	Up to 99 mph (160 km/h)
S	Up to 112 mph (180 km/h)
T	Up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U	Up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H	Up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V (with service description)	Up to 149 mph (240 km/h)
V (no service description)	Over 130 mph (210 km/h) ²
W	Up to 168 mph (270 km/h) ³
Y	Up to 186 mph (299 km/h) ³
Z (no service description)	Over 149 mph (240 km/h) ²

¹In laboratory tests that relate directly to highway speeds. Reminder: Actual tire speed and performance capability depend on factors such as inflation pressure, load, tire condition, wear and driving conditions.

²Although no upper limit speed is specified here, the indicated tires nonetheless have limited speed capability. Call (800)356-4644 for a referral for more technical information.

³Any tire with a speed capability above 149 mph (240 km/h) may, at the tire manufacturer's option, include a "ZR" in the size designation (example: P275/40ZR17). If a service description is not included, the tire manufacturer must be consulted for the maximum speed capability (example: P275/40ZR17 — speed capability is greater than 149 mph). If a service description is included, the speed capability is limited by the speed symbol in the service description (example: P275/40ZR17 93W = maximum speed 168 mph).

These speed ratings are based on laboratory tests under specific, controlled conditions. While these tests relate to performance on the road under those conditions, remember that real-life driving is rarely identical to any test conditions. Your tire's **actual speed capability may be less than its rated speed**, since it is affected by factors such as inflation pressure, load, prior alteration or damage, driving conditions, alignment, wear, vehicle condition and the duration for which high speed is sustained.

A tire's speed rating becomes **void** if the tire is repaired, re-treaded, damaged or abused, or otherwise altered from its original condition. Thereafter, it should be treated as a **non-speed-rated** tire.

The tire's speed rating designation appears on the tire sidewall with the tire size. Examples:

P215/65R15 88H P225/50VR16 91V 185/70SR13

In these examples, the "H," "V" and "S," respectively, are the speed ratings ("R" indicates that each of the tires is a radial). The "88H" and "91V" in the first two examples are called "service descriptions."

Tire Spinning

Safety Warning

Spinning a tire to remove a vehicle stuck in mud, ice, snow or wet grass can be dangerous. A tire spinning at a speedometer reading above 35 miles per hour (55km/h) can, in a matter of seconds, reach a speed capable of disintegrating the tire with explosive force. Under some conditions, a tire may spin at twice the speed shown on the speedometer. This could cause serious personal injury or death to a bystander or passenger, as well as extensive vehicle damage. Never spin tires above a speedometer reading of 35 miles per hour (55km/h).

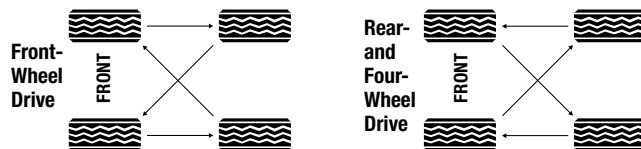
Safety Warning

Spin-balancing a tire at speeds exceeding a speedometer reading of 35 miles per hour (55km/h) [70 mph (115km/h) if the tire is being balanced off the vehicle or if your vehicle is equipped with a limited slip differential] can be dangerous. The tire may fail with explosive force, causing serious personal injury or death. Only trained personnel should spin-balance tires. You should stand well away from the work area when tires are spin-balanced.

Radial Tire Rotation

The purpose of tire rotation is to minimize irregular or uneven wear caused by maintaining a tire in one rotation direction and position over an extended period. Rotate tires as recommended by the vehicle manufacturer or every 5,000 to 7,500 miles. Frequently inspect tires for signs of irregular wear and rotate if necessary. Individual tire pressures must be checked after rotation and adjusted to the vehicle manufacturer's

recommendation for the new location on the vehicle. Vehicle alignment should be checked if irregular wear is evident. Use the vehicle manufacturer's recommended pattern for rotation or, if not provided, use the following:

**Tire Storage**

Tires should be stored indoors in a cool, dry place where water cannot collect inside the tires. The tires should be placed away from electric generators and motors and sources of heat such as hot pipes.

Storage surfaces should be clean and free of grease, gasoline and other substances that can deteriorate the rubber. Improper storage can damage your tires in ways that may not be visible and can lead to serious personal injury or death.

Tire Service/Customer Satisfaction

Normal tire maintenance and warranty service is available at Bridgestone/Firestone retailers across the United States and Canada. For more information, please call the technical service department at (800) 356-4644. In Canada, call (800) 267-1318.

Additional information about the care and service of automobile tires is available from:

Rubber Manufacturers Association
1400 K Street NW
Washington, D.C. 20005

or

Rubber Association of Canada
89 Queensway West, Suite 308
Mississauga, Ontario, Canada L5B2V2

Tire Registration

Registration of your tires is an important safety precaution because it enables the manufacturer to notify you in the event of a recall. When you purchase replacement tires at a Bridgestone/Firestone retailer, we will register the tires for you.

You need not register tires that come as original equipment on a new vehicle because the vehicle manufacturer handles that for you.

DUNLOP TIRE LIMITED WARRANTY

GENERAL INFORMATION

What Is Warranted

Every original-equipment Dunlop passenger-car tire that becomes unserviceable within six (6) years or 72 months of the date of manufacture for conditions other than those listed under "What Is Not Covered" will be replaced at a cost based on the amount of usable treadwear (wear down to the last 2/32nds of an inch) remaining.

Eligibility

This warranty is extended to the first retail purchaser for use of the vehicle.

Replacement Cost**No Charge**

If, during the first two thirty-seconds of an inch (2/32") of treadwear, the tire becomes unserviceable for a condition covered by this warranty, it will be replaced with a comparable new Dunlop tire. No charge will be made for mounting, balancing or taxes.

Pro Rata

If, during the first two thirty-seconds of an inch (2/32") of useable treadwear, the tire becomes unserviceable for a condition covered by this warranty, your Dunlop dealer will replace it with a comparable new Dunlop tire at a cost calculated in the following manner:

1. Either your original buying price substantiated by invoice or the dealer's current selling price
times (x)
2. The percentage (%) of useable tread worn, rounded off to the nearest 5% increment
plus (+)
3. All applicable taxes and all charges for dealer services such as mounting and balancing.

A cash refund will not be extended in lieu of the above.

What Is Not Covered

- Tires worn to the last two thirty-seconds of an inch (2/32") of original tread depth or to exposure of one or more treadwear indicator (TWI) bars. At this point, the tire has delivered its original useable tread life and there is no warranty regardless of the tire's age or mileage.
- Tires submitted for unserviceability before wear-out (2/32" tread depth remaining) but more than 72 months after the week of manufacture as determined by the U.S. Department of Transportation serial identification number.
- Tires submitted for ride disturbance complaints that are worn beyond the first two thirty-seconds of an inch (2/32") of tread depth.
- Ozone cracking or weather checking for tires treated with dressings or incompatible cleaning agents, or submitted more than four (4) years or 48 months after manufacture.
- Tires on cars normally operated outside the United States and Canada.
- Tires used at speeds in excess of legal or posted limits, in racing or for any other competition.
- Original-equipment tires used in any applications not recommended by the vehicle manufacturer or used in commercial applications.
- Over-the-highway tires used in off-road service.
- Claims made by anyone other than the first retail purchaser for use of the vehicle.
- Tires with the U.S. Department of Transportation serial identification number removed or rendered illegible.
- Tires improperly repaired (see "Safety and Maintenance Information"); with section repairs; whose sidewalls have been modified by the addition or removal of material; or whose tread pattern has been intentionally altered by, for example, regrooving or siping. *The serviceability of any repaired/altered tire is entirely the responsibility of the person making the repair or modification.*

DUNLOP TIRE LIMITED WARRANTY

- Tires injected with sealants or dry or liquid balancers, or for which anything other than air has been used as the supporting medium.
- Tires rendered unserviceable by road hazard-type damage such as impact breaks, punctures, cuts and snags.
- Tires rendered unserviceable as a result of obstruction on the vehicle, accident, theft, vandalism, chain damage, fire, corrosives, running while flat, improper inflation, overloading, improper mounting or rim fitment.
- Tires rendered unserviceable by spinning, as in mud, snow or sand; on ice; or during on-the-vehicle balancing.
- Tires irregularly worn or rendered unserviceable due to vehicle suspension deficiencies, wheel misalignment, improperly maintained inflation and balance, or failure to rotate at recommended intervals.
- Tires submitted for mileage warranty consideration.

Owner Obligations

You are responsible for proper tire application and care as well as lawful and prudent vehicle operation. Maintain tire inflation and load in accordance with vehicle owner's manual, tire information placard and restrictions molded on the tire sidewall. Frequently check inflation pressure with a tire gauge and inspect for damage or irregular wear.

For Replacement Consideration

- You must present the tire to a participating Dunlop dealer. Consult the Yellow Pages of your phone book for locations. Should you be unable to contact a dealer, you may call (800) 548-4714.
- You must submit the tire before wear-out (wear to the last 2/32" tread depth or to exposure of one or more treadwear indicator bars).
- Except for tires that become unserviceable during the first two thirty-seconds of an inch (2/32") of treadwear, you must pay the adjusted price of a new tire. You must also, if applicable, pay the

price differential involved in replacing the adjusted tire with a more expensive tire of different construction.

- Except for tires that become unserviceable during the first two thirty-seconds of an inch (2/32") of treadwear, you must pay all applicable taxes and all charges for dealer services such as mounting and balancing.
- You must present the tire for any ride disturbance complaint within the first two thirty-seconds of an inch (2/32") of treadwear.
- You must present the tire within six (6) years of the week of manufacture as confirmed by the Dunlop dealer (four years for ozone cracking).
- You (the tire owner) must completely fill out the customer information (name, telephone number, tire position and vehicle description) and sign the Dunlop Standard Claim Form.

Legal Rights

No implied warranties, either of merchantability or otherwise, are extended beyond the time when the tire has delivered its original tread life as shown by treadwear to two thirty-seconds of an inch (2/32") groove depth remaining. Except for the express warranties set forth in this "limited warranty," all other warranties, conditions, representations, promises, guarantees, covenants or collateral agreements, express or implied, statutory or otherwise, relating to the tire or any services provided in relation thereto are excluded to the extent permitted by law.

To the extent permitted by law, Dunlop shall not be responsible for: (1) any commercial loss, (2) any damage to or loss of property other than the tire itself, or (3) any other type of incidental, indirect, special or consequential damages arising from any cause whatsoever, including negligence.

In the United States, some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, or the exclusion of incidental, indirect, special or

DUNLOP TIRE LIMITED WARRANTY

consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

In Canada, legislation in some provinces provides for certain additional warranties or remedies other than as stated herein, and to the extent that the same may not be waived, the limitations and exclusions set out in the above may not apply to you. This “limited warranty” gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from province to province.

Modifications and Other Warranties

Different limited warranties are available for other Dunlop passenger-car tires. Ask your dealer for details.

No dealer, distributor or representative has authority to make any statement, commitment, promise or agreement binding upon Dunlop, except as stated herein, or except for any statement made binding upon Dunlop by any applicable law.

SAFETY AND MAINTENANCE INFORMATION**Tire Care**

The easiest way to help ensure top mileage and performance from your Dunlop radials is to give them a simple but frequent inspection for proper inflation, treadwear and the presence of any damage.

Safety warning: Serious injury may result from tire underinflation/overloading. Follow owner’s manual and tire placard in vehicle.

Do Maintain Proper Inflation Pressure in Your Tires

Proper inflation pressure is necessary for optimum tire performance, safety and fuel economy. To maintain proper inflation pressure, frequently check tires (when they are cool) with an accurate tire pressure gauge.

For example, it is difficult to tell just by looking at radial tires whether they are underinflated. Furthermore, when operating a vehicle equipped with radial tires, it is difficult to notice when a tire has gone flat or nearly flat since the “feel” of the vehicle does not change significantly.

Evidence of air loss or repeated underinflation always requires expert inspection to determine the source of leakage and tire removal to determine repairability. To avoid injury, never attempt to reinflate a tire that has been run severely underinflated or may be damaged.

Progressive air loss may result from punctures, cuts, impacts, rim cracks, curbing or partial bead unseating. Some fitment causes for air loss are: (1) incomplete bead seating, (2) bead tear caused by a machine tool due to insufficient lubrication or improper adjustment, (3) leaking valve core or rubber valve components. These should be replaced when problems are detected and whenever tires are replaced.

Underinflation is the most common cause of failures in any kind of tire and may result in severe cracking, component separation or “blowout,” with unexpected loss of vehicle control and accident. Underinflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance resulting in heat and mechanical damage.

Always maintain inflation pressure at the level recommended by the vehicle manufacturer as shown on the vehicle placard or in the owner’s manual. Higher inflation pressure increases stiffness, which may deteriorate ride and generate unwanted vibration. Overinflation also increases the chances of bruise damage.

Don’t Overload Your Vehicle

Check your vehicle owner’s manual to determine the load limits. Overloading your vehicle places stress on your tires and other critical vehicle components. Overloading can cause tire failure. Overloading a vehicle can also cause poor handling and increase fuel consumption. Never fit tires that have less load capacity than shown on the vehicle tire placard or original-equipment tire sidewalls.

Don't Spin Your Tires Excessively

Avoid excessive tire spinning when your vehicle is stuck in snow, ice, mud or sand. **Safety warning:** The centrifugal forces generated by a free-spinning tire/wheel assembly may cause sudden tire explosion resulting in vehicle damage and/or serious personal injury to you or a bystander. Never exceed 35 mph/60 km/h as indicated on your speedometer. Use a gentle backward-and-forward rocking motion to free your vehicle for continued driving. Never stand near or behind a tire spinning at high speed, for example, while attempting to push a vehicle that is stuck or when an on-the-car spin balance machine is in use.

Do Check Your Tires for Wear

Always remove tires from service when they reach two thirty-seconds of an inch (2/32") remaining tread depth. All new tires have treadwear indicators that appear as smooth bands in the tread grooves when

they wear to the two thirty-seconds of an inch (2/32") level. Many wet-weather accidents result from skidding on bald or nearly bald tires. Excessively worn tires are more susceptible to penetrations.

Don't Apply Sidewall Dressings/Cleaners

Dunlop sidewalls are specially compounded to resist ozone cracking and weather checking. Use a mild soap solution to clean sidewalls and white striping or lettering, and rinse off with plain water. Instruct service personnel never to apply any other materials to enhance sidewall appearance. These may degrade the rubber and remove inherent ozone resistance.

Do Check Your Tires for Damage

Frequent inspection of your tires for signs of damage and their general condition is important for safety. If you have any questions, have your tire dealer inspect the tires. Impacts, penetrations, cracks, knots, bulges

or air loss always require tire removal and expert inspection. Never perform a temporary repair or use an innertube as a substitute for a proper repair. Only qualified persons should repair tires.

A proper tire repair:

- Must be made between the tread shoulders to a straight-through puncture of 3/16" diameter or less that has no run-low, run-flat, cutting, cracking, separation or other damage.
- Must fill the injury. (Example: vulcanized rubber plug or patch-plug combination.)
- Must seal the inner liner. (Example: cemented patch or patch-plug combination.)
- Must be done from the inside of the tire. (This also ensures that the damaged tire is thoroughly inspected for secondary damage to the inner liner and plies.)

- Must conform to the repair-kit manufacturer's instructions. ("String" or fabric-based plugs are not recommended.)
- Must not be injected or inserted from the outside of the mounted tire.
- Must not employ a tube or sealant.

Note: Dunlop does not warrant any inspection or repair process. The repair is entirely the responsibility of the repairer. Do not exceed posted speed limits on repaired tire. Speed ratings are voided if tires are repaired.

Don't Attempt to Mount Your Own Tires

Safety warning: Serious injury may result from explosion of tire/rim assembly due to improper mounting procedures. Follow tire manufacturer's instructions and match tire diameter to rim diameter. Mount light-truck radials on rims approved for radial service. Do not apply bead sealer, as this can inhibit

bead seating. Lubricate beads and tire rim (including tube or flap) contact surfaces. Lock assembly on mounting machine or place in safety cage, *stand back* and never exceed 40 psi to seat beads. Never use a volatile substance or a rubber “donut” (also known as a bead expander or “O-ring”) to aid bead seating. Only specially trained persons should mount tires.

There are a number of serious injuries encountered each year as a result of tire-mounting accidents.

Don't Mix Tires of Different Sizes and Types on the Same Axle

For optimum handling and control, Dunlop recommends fitment of four tires of the same type and size unless otherwise specified by the vehicle manufacturer. Follow these additional guidelines: Fit newest tires on rear axle. If radials and non-radials must be fitted to the same vehicle, fit radials on rear axle. If tires of different profiles must be fitted, fit widest tires on

rear axle. Never mix radials and non-radials on the same axle. When fitting snow tires or all-season tires to front-wheel-drive and performance vehicles, always fit in sets of four. Do not fit tires with differing speed ratings. When replacing tires, always consult vehicle- and rim-manufacturer requirements for safety. Use of lift kits and some vehicle/tire combinations can cause instability. When changing sizes, carefully check vehicle/tire clearances.

Do Maintain Vehicle Suspension, Wheel Alignment and Balance, and Rotate Your Tires

Lack of rotation, worn suspension parts, underinflation/overinflation, wheel imbalance and misalignment can cause vibration or irregular wear. Rotate tires at maximum intervals of 6,000 miles/9,654 km.

Note: Where applied, speed ratings are indicative of high performance characteristics based on ECE 30 or ECE 54 European Indoor Wheel Testing as

performed by Dunlop and *are not valid for damaged, altered, repaired, underinflated, overloaded, excessively worn or re-treaded tires. Dunlop does not recommend the use of any of its products in excess of legal speed limits.* Snow, ice and poor drainage always require special handling care and greatly reduced speed.

Note: Re-treaded passenger-car and light-truck tires are not warranted by Dunlop for any reason. Dunlop speed ratings and U.S. Department of Transportation test compliance certifications are voided for re-treaded tires.

Additional Information

For additional information, see the *Consumer Tire Guide* published by the Tire Industry Safety Council, P.O. Box 1801, Washington, D.C. 20013-1801, or write Goodyear Dunlop Tires North America Ltd., P.O. Box 1109, Buffalo, NY 14240-1109. You may also call Dunlop at (800) 548-4714.

Eligibility

You are eligible for the benefits of this limited warranty if you are the owner or authorized agent of the owner of new Goodyear highway auto or light-truck tires (excluding antique and classic tires) bearing Department of Transportation prescribed tire identification numbers, and if your tires have been used only on the vehicle on which they were originally installed according to the vehicle manufacturer's or Goodyear's recommendations.

Coverage

Free Replacement

Any new Goodyear highway radial auto or light-truck tire covered by this limited warranty that is removed from service due to a material- or workmanship-related condition (subject to the limitations on pages 63–64) during the first 25 percent of usable treadwear or 12 months from date of purchase, whichever occurs first, will be replaced with a comparable new Goodyear tire at no charge. Mounting and balancing are included.

Prorated Adjustment

A tire not eligible for no-charge replacement that is removed from service due to a material- or workmanship-related condition (subject to the limitations on pages 63–64) will be replaced with a comparable new Goodyear tire on a pro rata basis. Replacement price will be calculated by multiplying Goodyear's predetermined price for adjustment or the current advertised price for the tire at the adjustment location, whichever is lower, by the percentage of original useable tread that has been worn off at the time of adjustment. You pay for mounting, balancing and the full federal excise tax applicable to the replacement tire.

Example: If your disabled tire had 8/32nds of an inch of original usable tread and is worn to 4/32nds of an inch of usable tread, you have used 50 percent of the original usable tread. You must therefore pay 50 percent of the predetermined price for adjustment or 50 percent of the advertised price for the replacement tire, whichever is lower, plus the full federal excise tax applicable to the replacement tire. If the price of

the replacement tire is \$80.00 and federal excise tax is \$2.00, the cost to you would be \$42.00.

The predetermined price for adjustment, available at all Goodyear retailers, represents the regular retail selling price of the replacement tire at the time of adjustment.

This warranty ends when a tire has delivered its full original tread life (i.e., when treadwear indicators become visible), regardless of tire age or mileage.

Definition of Comparable Tire

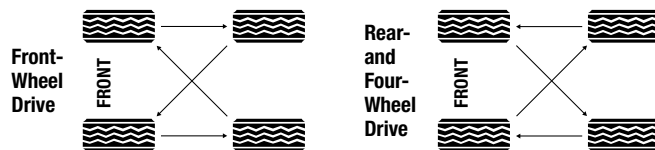
A comparable new Goodyear tire may be either the same line of tire or, if the disabled tire is out of production, the same basic construction and quality with different sidewall or tread configuration.

If you accept a higher-priced tire as a replacement, you are responsible for the difference in price.

Any replacement tire provided under this warranty will be covered by the Goodyear warranty in effect at the time of replacement.

Maintenance

See your vehicle owner's manual for tire inflation and maintenance recommendations. Wheel alignment should be checked at the first sign of uneven tire wear. If your owner's manual does not recommend a rotation pattern, below are recommended tire rotation patterns for radial tires used on passenger cars and light trucks. Use the pattern that applies to your vehicle.



Limitations

This limited warranty is applicable only in the United States and Canada.

No representative or retailer has authority to make any representation, promise or agreement on behalf of Goodyear, except as stated herein.

GOODYEAR TIRE LIMITED WARRANTY

Goodyear does not warrant or give credit in any adjustment transaction for any kind of material added to a tire (e.g., tire fillers, sealants and balancing substances) after the tire leaves a Goodyear factory, nor will it adjust any tire that has failed as a result of adding such material. In addition, this limited warranty does not cover the following:

- Irregular wear and/or damage due to road hazards (including punctures, cuts, snags, impact breaks, etc.), wreck, collision, fire, improper inflation, overloading, high-speed spin-up, misapplication, misuse, negligence, racing, chain damage, improper mounting or demounting, improper maintenance, improper rotation or mechanical condition of vehicle.
- Ride disturbance that occurs after the first 25 percent of usable treadwear or that is caused by damaged wheels or any vehicle condition.
- Temporary spare tires used on vehicles used for racing or on passenger cars used for special applications, such as police pursuit service.

- Any tire that, after leaving a Goodyear factory, has been intentionally altered to change its appearance (e.g., white inlay on a black tire).
- Tires with weather cracking that were purchased more than four years prior to presentation for adjustment or, if purchase date cannot be verified, manufactured more than four years prior to presentation for adjustment.
- Loss of time, inconvenience, loss of vehicle use or consequential damages.

Goodyear disclaims any liability for incidental or consequential damages to the extent permitted by law. Some jurisdictions do not permit the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so this limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

Any tire, no matter how well constructed, may fail in service or otherwise become unserviceable due to conditions beyond the control of the manufacturer. This warranty is not intended as a representation that a tire failure cannot occur.

Owner's Obligations

You must present the tire to be adjusted to an authorized Goodyear retailer. (Please consult your telephone directory or call 800/GOODYEAR for locations.) Replaced tires become the property of Goodyear Tire and Rubber Company.

You must pay for taxes and any additional services you order at the time of adjustment.

You must submit your claim on a Goodyear claim form (available from a Goodyear retailer). The form must be filled out completely and signed by you, the owner of the tire presented for adjustment, or your authorized agent.

Legal Rights

This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from state to state and in Canada from province to province.

Safety Warning

Serious injury may result from:

- Tire failure due to underinflation/overloading. *Follow the specifications in your owner's manual or on the tire placard in your vehicle.*
- Explosion of tire/rim assembly due to improper mounting. *Only specially trained persons should mount tires. Radial tires must be mounted on approved rims.*

Caution Regarding Tire Spinning

On slippery surfaces such as snow, mud and ice, do not spin tires at a speedometer reading above 35 miles per hour/55 kilometers per hour. Personal injury and property damage, including tire disintegration and axle failure, may result from excessive tire spinning.

GENERAL INFORMATION

As the original purchaser of a Michelin passenger-car or light-truck tire, all the benefits and conditions described in this limited warranty apply to you.

To ensure your understanding of and compliance with the terms and conditions of this warranty, please read it in its entirety. It is essential that you also read and understand the safety and maintenance recommendations beginning on page 69.

What Is Covered and How Long

When used in normal service on the vehicle on which they were originally fitted in accordance with the safety and maintenance recommendations herein, Michelin passenger-car and light-truck tires are covered by this warranty against defects in materials and workmanship for the life of the original usable tread or six years from the date of purchase, whichever occurs first. At that time, all warranties, express or implied, are terminated. The usable tread is the original tread down to the level of the treadwear indicators, i.e., 2/32nds of an inch (1.6 mm) of tread.

Date of purchase is verified by new-vehicle registration certificate or tire sales invoice. If date of purchase cannot be verified, coverage will be based on date of tire manufacture.

What Is Not Covered

This warranty does not cover tires that become unserviceable due to:

- Road hazard injury (e.g., cuts, snags, bruises, impact damage and punctures), whether repairable or not.
- Incorrect mounting, tire/wheel imbalance or improper repair.
- Flat spotting and other problems caused by improper storage.
- Underinflation, overinflation, improper maintenance, racing or abuse.
- Vehicle mechanical problems such as wheel misalignment.

- Accident, fire, chemical corrosion, alteration or vandalism.
- Ozone cracking or weather cracking.

Replacement Charges

A tire that becomes unserviceable due to a condition covered by this warranty within 12 months of the date of purchase and when $\frac{2}{32}$ nds of an inch (1.6 mm) or less of the original tread is worn (or 25 percent or less, whichever is most beneficial to the user) will be replaced with a comparable new Michelin tire free of charge. Mounting and balancing are included. The cost of applicable taxes and any other services is payable by the user.

After 12 months from the date of purchase or when more than $\frac{2}{32}$ nds of an inch of original tread has been worn (or more than 25 percent, whichever is most beneficial to the user), the user must pay the cost

of a comparable new Michelin replacement tire on a pro rata basis. This cost is determined by multiplying the percentage of the original usable tread worn by the current selling price of the replacement tire at the adjustment location or the price on the current Michelin Base Price List, whichever is lower.* This list is based on predetermined prices intended to fairly represent the actual selling price of Michelin tires. The cost of applicable taxes, mounting, balancing and any other services is payable by the user.

Making a Claim

To make a claim under the terms of this warranty, present the tire to a participating Michelin retailer. To locate a participating retailer, check the Yellow Pages under "Tire Dealers – Retail."

The vehicle on which the tire was used should be available to the Michelin retailer for inspection.

*In Canada, pro rata replacement cost is calculated by multiplying the percentage of original usable tread worn by the current Michelin suggested retail price.

MICHELIN TIRE LIMITED WARRANTY

If you require further assistance, please call (800) 847-3435 or write Michelin North America, Attention: Consumer Relations Department, P.O. Box 19001, Greenville, SC 29602.

Conditions and Exclusions

Unless limited by state law, this warranty does not provide compensation for loss of time, loss of vehicle use, inconvenience or consequential damages.

Tires presented for claim remain the property of the consumer. Michelin accepts no responsibility for loss of or damage to tires in the custody or control of a Michelin retailer for the purpose of inspection for warranty adjustment. In the event of a disputed claim, the consumer must make the tire available for further inspection.

No Michelin representative, employee or retailer has the authority to make or imply any representation,

promise or agreement that in any way varies the terms of this warranty.

This warranty applies only in the United States and Canada.

Consumer Rights

This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from state to state and in Canada from province to province.

SAFETY AND MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

Read your vehicle owner's manual, the information on the sidewall of your tires and your vehicle's tire information placard for essential safety and maintenance information.

Safety Warning

Disregarding any of the safety precautions in this booklet may result in tire failure or explosion causing serious personal injury or death.

Tire Spinning

Do not spin tires at a speedometer reading above 35 miles per hour (55 km/h). Excessive speed in a free-running, unloaded tire can cause the tire to explode from centrifugal force. The energy released by such an explosion is sufficient to cause serious physical injury or death. Never allow anyone to stand near or behind a spinning tire.

When in mud, sand, snow, ice or other slippery conditions, do not spin wheels excessively. With automatic transmission vehicles, accelerating the motor excessively under such conditions can cause one of the drive tires to spin beyond its speed capacity. Accelerating the engine to spin a wheel when attempting to balance a drive tire/wheel assembly can also cause a tire to spin beyond its speed capacity.

Tire Inflation

Driving on a tire that does not have the correct inflation pressure is dangerous. An underinflated tire builds up excessive heat that may result in sudden tire destruction. If tires are supplied as original equipment, refer to the tire placard on your vehicle (check vehicle and/or vehicle owner's manual for placard location) for the recommended operating pressures. For replacement tires, the correct inflation pressure should be provided by your tire dealer. If it is not, refer to the vehicle tire placard.

MICHELIN TIRE LIMITED WARRANTY

Always maintain minimum recommended inflation pressures. Never exceed the maximum pressure rating indicated on a tire's sidewall.

Use an accurate tire gauge to check pressure. Never allow children to inflate or deflate tires.

Failure to maintain correct inflation pressures may result in improper vehicle handling, rapid and irregular tire wear, sudden tire destruction, loss of vehicle control and serious personal injury. Therefore, inflation pressures should be checked at least once a month and always prior to long-distance trips. This applies to all tires — including sealant types, which are as susceptible to losing air pressure as any other type if not properly maintained.

Pressures should be checked when tires are cold; in other words, before they have been driven on. Driving, even for a short distance, causes tires to heat up and air pressure to increase.

Checking Pressure When Tires Are Hot

When tires have been driven for more than three minutes or one mile, pressures will increase by approximately 4 psi. Therefore, when adjusting tire pressures under these conditions, add 4 psi to the recommended cold-inflation pressure.

For example:

Gauge reading of hot tire:	32 psi
Recommended cold-inflation pressure:	30 psi
Add 4 psi to recommended cold-inflation pressure:	34 psi
Air pressure to add to hot tire:	2 psi

Check cold-inflation pressures as soon as possible, at least by the next day. Bleeding air from hot tires may result in underinflation.

High Speed

Correct inflation pressure is especially important when driving at high speed. However, even when tires have correct inflation pressure, road hazards are more

difficult to avoid and have a greater chance of causing tire damage when a vehicle is driven at high speed. Moreover, driving at high speed reduces the reaction time available to avoid accidents and bring a vehicle to a safe stop.

If you see any damage to a tire or wheel after driving at high speed, replace with a spare and see a Michelin tire retailer at once.

Exceeding the maximum speed shown at right for each type of Michelin tire will cause the tire to build up excessive heat, which can cause damage that could result in sudden tire destruction and rapid air loss. This could lead to a loss of vehicle control.

In any case, you should not exceed reasonable speed as indicated by driving conditions and legal limits.

Speed Ratings

Speed symbols are shown on the sidewall of some Michelin tires. The following table shows the maximum speed corresponding to each symbol.

<u>Speed-Rating Symbol</u>	<u>Maximum Speed</u>	
	<u>MPH</u>	<u>KM/H</u>
M	81	130
N	87	140
P	93	150
Q	99	160
R	106	170
S	112	180
T	118	190
H	130	210
V ¹	149	240
W	168	270 ZR ²
Y	186	300 ZR ²

¹Some V (or VR) rated tires have a speed capability greater than 149 mph (240 km/h). Consult Michelin for maximum speed rating if your vehicle's capability exceeds this speed.

²Z (or ZR) rated tires are designed for use on cars with maximum speed capability greater than 149 mph (240 km/h). W and Y speed ratings are sub-categories of Z. Consult Michelin for maximum speed capability.

MICHELIN TIRE LIMITED WARRANTY

Although a tire may be speed-rated, Michelin does not endorse the operation of any vehicle in an unsafe or unlawful manner. Speed ratings are based on laboratory tests that relate to performance on the road, but do not apply if tires are underinflated, overloaded, worn out, damaged, altered, improperly repaired or re-treaded. Furthermore, tire speed ratings do not mean that a vehicle can be safely driven at the maximum speed for which its tires are rated, particularly under adverse road and weather conditions or if the vehicle has unusual characteristics.

Michelin passenger-car highway tires that do not have a speed symbol on the sidewall have a maximum speed of 105 miles per hour. Light-truck highway tires that do not have a speed symbol on the sidewall have a maximum speed of 87 miles per hour.

The speed ratings and other ratings of re-treaded tires are assigned by the re-treader and supersede Michelin's original ratings.

Important: To maintain the speed capability of a vehicle, replacement tires must have speed ratings equal to or higher than the original tires' speed ratings (as indicated on the vehicle tire placard or in the vehicle owner's manual). If replacement tires have lower speed ratings, the speed capability of the vehicle will be reduced to the maximum speed capability of the lowest-rated replacement tire.

Remember: High-speed driving can be dangerous and may damage your tires. When driving at high speed, correct inflation pressure is especially important.

Inspecting Your Tires

Whenever you see damage to one of your tires or wheels, replace with a spare and see a Michelin retailer at once.

When inspecting your tires, including the spare, check air pressure. If a tire has lost pressure of two pounds or more, look for signs of penetration, valve leakage or wheel damage that may account for the air loss.

Always look for bulges, cracks, cuts, penetrations and abnormal tire wear — particularly on the edges of the tread — that may be caused by misalignment or underinflation. If any such damage is found, the tire must be inspected by a Michelin retailer at once. Use of a damaged tire could result in tire destruction.

All tires wear out faster when subjected to high speeds, hard cornering, rapid starts, sudden stops, off-road use or frequent driving on roads that are in poor condition. Roads with holes, rocks or other objects can damage tires and cause misalignment of your vehicle. When you drive on such roads, drive carefully

and slowly and, before driving again at normal speeds, examine your tires for unusual wear patterns and damage such as cuts, bulges, penetrations, etc.

Wear Bars

Michelin tires contain wear bars in the grooves of the tread that appear when only 2/32nds of an inch (1.6 mm) of tread is remaining. When the wear bars appear, your tires must be replaced. Tires worn beyond this stage are dangerous.

Vehicle Load

The maximum load rating of your tires is marked on the sidewall. Do not exceed this rating. To ensure that your tires are not overloaded, follow the loading instructions of the vehicle manufacturer. Tires loaded beyond their maximum allowable load for a particular application will build up excessive heat that may result in sudden tire destruction.

Do not exceed the gross axle weight rating for any axle on your vehicle.

Towing

If you anticipate towing a trailer, see a Michelin retailer for advice about tire size and pressure. Tire size and pressure will depend upon the type and size of trailer and hitch used, but in no case should the maximum cold inflation pressure or tire load rating be exceeded. Check your vehicle tire placard and owner's manual for further recommendations about towing.

Wheel Alignment and Balancing

At least once a month, check your tires for wear. If they are wearing unevenly (such as the inside shoulder wearing faster than the rest of the tread), or if you detect excessive vibration, your wheels may be out of alignment or balance. These conditions not only shorten the life of your tires, they adversely affect the handling characteristics of your vehicle, which could be dangerous. If you detect irregular wear or vibration, have wheel alignment and balance checked immediately.

Tire Mixing

Michelin tires are radial tires. For best performance, it is recommended that the same size and type of tire be used on all four wheels. In certain tires, ply material and construction may vary as indicated on the sidewall. All Michelin tires of the same size and tread design are fully compatible.

Before mixing tires of different types on a vehicle in any configuration, check the vehicle owner's manual for the manufacturer's recommendations. It is also important to check the owner's manual before mixing or matching tires on four-wheel-drive vehicles, as this may require special precautions.

Tire Rotation

To obtain optimum performance from your tires, it may be necessary to rotate them. Refer to your vehicle owner's manual for instructions on tire rotation.

Some tires have arrows on the sidewall showing the direction in which the tire should turn. When rotating this type of tire, care must be taken to maintain the proper turning direction.

If you do not have an owner's manual for your vehicle, Michelin recommends inspecting your tires every 6,000 to 8,000 miles and rotating tires at the first sign of uneven wear. This recommendation applies to both front-wheel-drive and rear-wheel-drive vehicles.

Note: Tires that meet the Rubber Manufacturers Association definition of mud and snow tires are marked M/S, M+S or M&S. This designation is molded into the tire's sidewall. Tires without this designation are not recommended for mud or snow driving.

Tire Alterations

Do not alter your tires in any way. Alterations may prevent proper tire performance, which could lead to tire damage that results in an accident. Tires that

become unserviceable due to alterations such as truing, whitewall inlays and the addition of balancing or sealant liquids are not covered by this warranty.

Repairs

If one of your tires has sustained a puncture, have the tire inspected immediately by a Michelin retailer.

Punctures that do not exceed 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter can be repaired if no more than one radial cable per casing ply is damaged. For tires with a speed rating below H, punctures in the sidewall of 1/8 inch or less can also be repaired. Do not make sidewall repairs in any tire with a speed rating of H, V, W, Y or Z. Tire punctures consistent with these guidelines can be repaired by following the recommended repair procedures of Michelin or the Rubber Manufacturers Association. If tire damage exceeds these guidelines, the tire must be replaced.

MICHELIN TIRE LIMITED WARRANTY

On-the-wheel repairs or plug-only repairs should not be made. They may cause further tire damage because the repair may not be air-tight and/or the plug may fail.

Storage

Tires should be stored in a cool, dry place indoors so there is no danger of water collecting inside them. When tube-type tires are mounted with water trapped between the tire and the tube, liquid may pass through the inner liner and into the casing plies. This can result in sudden tire failure. Most problems of this nature are caused by improper storage that permits water to enter the casing between the tire and tube prior to mounting.

Tires contain waxes and emollients to protect their outer surfaces from ozone cracking and weather cracking. As the tire rolls and flexes, the waxes and emollients continually migrate to the surface, replenishing this protection throughout the normal use of the tire. When tires sit outdoors unused for a month or more, their surfaces become dry and more susceptible to ozone cracking and weather cracking. That's why tires should always be stored in a cool, dry place away from sources of heat such as hot-water pipes and electric generators. Also, make sure that the surfaces on which tires are stored are free of grease, gasoline and other substances that could deteriorate rubber. Failure to store tires in accordance with these instructions could result in premature aging of the tires and sudden tire failure.

Mounting

Tire mounting can be dangerous and must be done by professionally trained persons using the proper tools and procedures as specified by the Rubber Manufacturers Association.

Tires should be mounted on wheels of correct size and type that are in good, clean condition. Bent, chipped or rusted wheels may cause tire damage. The inside of the tire must be free from foreign material. Have your tire retailer check the wheels before mounting new tires. Mismatched tires and rims can explode during mounting. Also, mismatched tires and rims can result in tire failure on the road. If a tire is mounted on the wrong-sized rim, do not remount it on the proper rim; scrap it. It may be damaged internally because it is dangerously stretched, and could fail on the highway.

Old valves may leak. When new tubeless tires are mounted, have new valves of the correct type installed. Tubeless tires must be mounted only on wheels designed for tubeless tires, i.e., wheels that have safety humps or ledges. Make sure all valves have suitable valve caps. Valve caps are the primary seal against air loss.

Tires and wheels that are not balanced may cause steering difficulties, a bumpy ride and irregular tire wear. It is recommended that you have your tires and wheels balanced.

MICHELIN TIRE LIMITED WARRANTY

For Assistance

Any time you see damage to your tires or wheels, immediately contact a Michelin retailer. To locate a Michelin retailer, check the Yellow Pages under “Tire Dealers – Retail.” If you need further assistance, contact:

In the United States:

(800) TIRE HELP (800/847-3435)

or

Michelin North America

Attention: Consumer Relations Department

P.O. Box 19001

Greenville, SC 29602

In Canada:

(800) 461-8473

In Quebec: (800) 565-7638

or

Michelin North America (Canada) Ltd.

Les Tours Triomphe

2540 Boulevard Daniel-Johnson

Laval, Quebec H7T 2T9

Remember, to avoid damage to your tires and possible accident:

- Check the pressure of your tires (including the spare) at least once a month and before long trips, and always when tires are cold.
- Do not underinflate or overinflate your tires.
- Do not overload your tires.
- Drive at moderate speed and observe legal speed limits.
- Avoid driving over potholes, obstacles, curbs and edges of pavement.
- Avoid excessive tire spinning.
- If you see any damage to a tire, replace with a spare and see a Michelin retailer at once.
- If you have any questions, contact a Michelin retailer.

GENERAL INFORMATION

You are responsible for ensuring that your Lexus is operated and maintained according to the instructions in the *Owner's Manual* and the "Maintenance Information" section of this supplement.

You should keep detailed records of vehicle maintenance, since under some circumstances they may be required for warranty coverage. These records should include date of service, mileage at time of service and a description of service performed and/or parts installed. For your convenience, maintenance logs are included in the "Maintenance Information" section of this supplement. If you sell your vehicle, you should give your maintenance records to the new owner.

Lexus will not deny a warranty claim solely because you do not have records to show that you maintained your vehicle. However, damage or failures caused by lack of proper maintenance are not covered under warranty.

WHERE TO GO FOR MAINTENANCE

You may have maintenance performed on your vehicle by any qualified person or facility. However, Lexus recommends having maintenance performed by an authorized Lexus dealership.

Lexus dealership technicians are specially trained to maintain and repair Lexus vehicles. They stay current on the latest service information through Lexus technical bulletins, service publications and training courses. Many are also certified through the Lexus Commitment to Perfection Certification Program, which requires specialized, state-of-the-art training as well as rigorous exams through both Lexus and the National Institute for Automotive Service Excellence.

You can be confident you're getting the best possible service for your vehicle when you take it to a Lexus dealership. Plus, a Lexus dealership will always use Genuine Lexus Parts designed specifically for your vehicle.

REPLACEMENT PARTS

Warranty coverage is not dependent upon the use of any particular brand of replacement parts. However, Lexus recommends using only Genuine Lexus Parts when you need to replace a part on your vehicle. Like all Lexus products, Genuine Lexus Parts are built to the highest standards of quality, durability and performance. They are also designed to fit your vehicle's exact specifications.

Your Lexus dealership maintains an extensive inventory of Genuine Lexus Parts to meet your vehicle service needs. And because it is linked electronically to Lexus Parts Distribution Centers, the dealership has quick access to any parts it may not have in stock.

Genuine Lexus Parts are covered by their own warranty (see your dealer for details) or the remainder of any applicable New Vehicle Limited Warranty, whichever is longer. **Non-Genuine Lexus Parts, or any damage or failures resulting from their use, are not covered by any Lexus warranty.**

BY GEOGRAPHIC REGION

In the United States, U.S. Territories and Canada

To obtain warranty service in the United States, U.S. territories or Canada, take your vehicle to an authorized Lexus dealership. If your vehicle cannot be driven, contact your nearest Lexus dealership for towing assistance. You do not have to pay for towing to the nearest Lexus dealership if your vehicle is inoperable due to failure of a warranted part.

Outside the United States, U.S. Territories and Canada

If you are using your vehicle outside the United States, U.S. territories and Canada and need warranty service, contact a local Lexus dealership. Please note, however, that your vehicle may not be repaired free of charge because the local Lexus distributor may have no obligation to provide warranty service for your vehicle, and/or your vehicle may not comply with local regulatory or environmental requirements.

EMERGENCY REPAIRS

If your vehicle is inoperable or unsafe to drive and there is no Lexus dealership reasonably available to make repairs, you may perform the repairs yourself or have them performed by another automotive service provider. Lexus will reimburse you for any of the repairs that are covered by warranty. To receive reimbursement, present to an authorized Lexus dealership your paid repair invoices and any parts that were removed from the vehicle. You will be reimbursed for warranted parts at the manufacturer's suggested retail price and warranted labor at a geographically appropriate hourly rate multiplied by Lexus' recommended time allowance for the repair.

If your vehicle requires emergency repair, Lexus assumes no liability for subsequent failures caused by improper repairs or the use of non-Genuine Lexus Parts unless you have the vehicle properly repaired in a timely manner. To ensure that warranty coverage remains intact, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Lexus dealership as soon as possible after an emergency repair.

2001 Lexus Owner's Manual Supplement

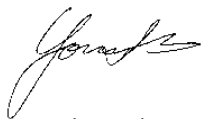
- **Owner Amenities**
- **Warranty Information**
- **Maintenance Information**



From everyone in the Lexus organization, thank you for purchasing one of our vehicles. Your Lexus is the culmination of more than 50 years of research and development by Toyota Motor Corporation, and is designed to deliver uncompromising luxury and performance.

This booklet has been developed to help you obtain the highest level of satisfaction from your Lexus. Please take some time to review it carefully. In addition to important information about warranty coverages and maintenance requirements, you'll find details on a host of amenities available exclusively to Lexus owners.

Thank you again for choosing Lexus, and please accept our best wishes for years of safe and pleasurable driving. For the latest information about our vehicles and our company, please visit our Web site at **www.lexus.com**. To access your dealership's Web site, log on to **www.lexusdealer.com**. We are committed to providing you with an ownership experience that is second to none, and we look forward to serving you in the years ahead. Welcome to the Lexus family!



Yoshi Inaba
President and Chief Executive Officer
Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

OWNER AMENITIES

Complimentary Services

First Two Maintenance Services	4
Loaner Vehicle	4
Travel Protection	4
Roadside Assistance	5

Other Benefits and Assistance

Quality Control	7
Vehicle Service History	7
Vehicle Service Agreements	7
Additional Keys	8
Body Repairs	8
If You Need Assistance	8
BBB AUTO LINE Arbitration	10

WARRANTY INFORMATION

Introduction

The Lexus Commitment	14
Warranty Coverages at a Glance	15

Your Warranties in Detail

General Warranty Provisions	16
New Vehicle Limited Warranty	18

Federal Emission Control Warranty	22
California Emission Control Warranty	28
Tire Limited Warranty	34
• Bridgestone/Firestone	35
• Dunlop	52
• Goodyear	62
• Michelin	66

Your Responsibilities

Operation and Maintenance	79
Obtaining Warranty Service	81

MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

Introduction

The Importance of Scheduled Maintenance	82
Maintenance and Lexus Warranty Coverage	83
Lexus Dealership Service	84

Maintenance Logs

Determining Your Vehicle's Maintenance Needs	85
Explanation of Maintenance Items	87
Scheduled Maintenance Log	91
Body Inspection Log	112
Vehicle Identification	118
Notes Pages	119

To help ensure that your ownership experience is pleasant, convenient and trouble-free, Lexus provides you with a variety of complimentary services. These services are described on the following pages. Other valuable owner benefits are described in the section entitled “Other Benefits and Assistance” beginning on page 7.

First Two Maintenance Services

The first two scheduled maintenance services for your Lexus are provided at no charge. The first service is at 30 days and includes a body/chassis inspection, a check for fluid leaks and a vehicle road test. The second service is at 5,000 miles/4 months or 7,500 miles/6 months, depending on which maintenance interval you use. This service includes a change of the engine oil and oil filter, rotation of the tires and a vehicle road test. See page 85 to determine the proper maintenance interval for your vehicle.

To obtain your complimentary scheduled maintenance services, call an authorized Lexus dealership to make an appointment, or take your vehicle to the dealership. The dealership will verify performance of the services on page 91 of this booklet.

Loaner Vehicle

If your vehicle must be kept overnight at a Lexus dealership for a warranty-covered condition that requires more than eight hours to repair, Lexus will provide you with a complimentary loaner vehicle for up to five days.

Travel Protection

Lexus will reimburse for a rental car for up to five days and for overnight lodging for up to three nights (not to exceed \$200 per night) if all of the following occur:

- Your vehicle becomes inoperable or unsafe to drive when you are more than 100 miles from home.

- Your vehicle's malfunction is caused by a warranty-covered condition.
- Repairs will take longer than eight hours to complete.

To obtain reimbursement for rental car and lodging expenses, contact a Lexus dealership service consultant.

Roadside Assistance

Lexus roadside assistance coverage is for 48 months from your vehicle's in-service date, regardless of mileage. Coverage is provided 24 hours a day, 365 days a year, for vehicles operated in the United States, U.S. territories and Canada. Assistance is administered through the American Automobile Association.

Services Provided

- Roadside services such as battery jump-start, tire change and fuel delivery.
- Towing to the nearest Lexus dealership (or an alternate repair facility, if necessary).
- Assistance in locating alternate transportation and lodging.
- Shipping of repair parts to remote locations.
- A technical assistance hotline to provide repair information to non-Lexus facilities.

How to Get Help

To obtain roadside assistance, take the following steps:

- 1) Call (800) 25-LEXUS (800/255-3987).
- 2) Have as much of the following information as possible:
 - Vehicle identification number (located on the driver's side corner of the dashboard, under the window)
 - Owner's name and home address
 - Vehicle license plate number
 - Location of vehicle, including the nearest major intersection

COMPLIMENTARY SERVICES

- 3) To determine your location, the dispatch operator will ask you for the area code and first three digits of the phone number from which you are calling. If you are calling from your cellular phone:
- Obtain a phone number from a telephone near your location; or
 - Call directory assistance and obtain the phone number of a nearby business; or
 - Call the local cellular operator and ask for the area code and prefix of the cell you are in.
- 4) Wait at your vehicle or in a nearby secure location for the roadside assistance provider to arrive.

Additional Coverage

After your roadside assistance coverage expires, you may join a motor club created exclusively for Lexus owners. Benefits include roadside assistance coverage, a trip-planning service and discounts on travel and dining. For further information, call (800) 25-LEXUS.

Quality Control

You may have noticed a few miles on the odometer when you took delivery of your IS 300. This mileage is a result of the comprehensive process used to ensure the quality of your vehicle.

Every Lexus undergoes three major inspections after leaving the assembly line. The first is conducted by Toyota Motor Corporation before the vehicle is shipped from Japan. The second is conducted at the vehicle's port of entry in the United States. The final inspection takes place at the selling dealership and includes a road test conducted by a trained Lexus technician.

If you'd like to know more about Lexus quality-control procedures, ask a Lexus dealership service consultant.

Vehicle Service History

When you have your vehicle serviced at a Lexus dealership, your service information is recorded in the Lexus National Service History database. This is the first database of its kind in the automotive industry. It can be accessed by any Lexus dealership in the United States — a great convenience if you relocate or need to have your vehicle serviced while traveling.

Vehicle Service Agreements

If you plan to keep your vehicle for several years or if you accumulate mileage quickly, you may want to purchase a Lexus vehicle service agreement. These agreements cover the cost of specific repairs beyond the factory warranty period. They also cover services such as towing, substitute transportation and lodging to minimize your inconvenience should your vehicle require repair. Lexus vehicle service agreements are available with a variety of coverage options. A Lexus dealership sales consultant can help you select the plan that's best for you.

Additional Keys

Your vehicle comes with two master keys, a valet key and a key card designed to be kept in a purse or billfold. If you require additional keys, call or visit an authorized Lexus dealership. You will need to provide the dealership with your vehicle's key code (found on the key number plate provided with your original set of keys). In most cases, new keys can be ready within five business days.

Body Repairs

If you're involved in a collision, you want your vehicle to be returned to its pre-accident condition when repaired. That's why it is important to make sure repairs are made only with Genuine Lexus Parts. Some repair shops and insurance companies may suggest using imitation or salvaged parts to save money. However, these parts do not meet Lexus' high standards for quality, fit and corrosion resistance. In addition, imitation and salvaged parts (and any damage or failures they may cause) are not covered by any Lexus warranty.

The best way to ensure that your vehicle is repaired with Genuine Lexus Parts is to take it to a Lexus dealership. Each dealership works with selected collision repair centers that meet Lexus' strict requirements for training, equipment, quality and customer satisfaction. These repair centers use Genuine Lexus Parts exclusively in the repair of Lexus vehicles.

If You Need Assistance

Both Lexus and your Lexus dealer are dedicated to serving your automotive needs. Your complete satisfaction is our first priority. Should you have a problem or concern, please take the following steps to ensure the quickest possible response:

Step 1

Discuss the situation with a dealership manager, such as the service manager or customer satisfaction manager. If necessary, ask the dealership owner or general manager for assistance. In most cases, a satisfactory solution can be reached at this step.

Step 2

If the dealership does not address your concern to your satisfaction, call the Lexus Customer Satisfaction Department at (800) 25-LEXUS (800/255-3987). In Canada, call (800) 26-LEXUS (800/265-3987). In Mexico, call 95-1-310-328-2075. If you are hearing- or speech-impaired, call (800) 443-4999 (TDD).

You may also write to us at:

Lexus Customer Satisfaction Department
P.O. Box 2991
Torrance, CA 90509-2991

Whether calling or writing, please provide the following information:

- Vehicle identification number (located on the driver's side corner of the dashboard, under the window)
- Current vehicle mileage
- Name of your selling and servicing Lexus dealerships
- Your day and evening telephone numbers

Step 3

If your concern has still not been resolved to your satisfaction, Lexus offers additional assistance through BBB AUTO LINE, a dispute resolution program administered by the Council of Better Business Bureaus. The purpose of BBB AUTO LINE is to resolve disputes through arbitration — a process by which two parties authorize an independent third party to hear and resolve a dispute. The program is informal and free of charge. To request that your case be reviewed through the program, contact:

BBB AUTO LINE
4200 Wilson Blvd., Suite 800
Arlington, VA 22203
(800) 955-5100

BBB AUTO LINE typically renders a decision within 40 days of receiving your request for arbitration. This decision is binding on Lexus but not on you.

Important: You must use BBB AUTO LINE before seeking remedies through a court action pursuant to

the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act. You may also be required to use BBB AUTO LINE before seeking remedies under the “Lemon Laws” of your state. For the requirements applicable to your state, see the appropriate page of the *Owner’s Manual Supplement – Lemon Law Information* booklet located in your glove box.

BBB AUTO LINE Arbitration

What is BBB AUTO LINE?

BBB AUTO LINE consists of local Better Business Bureau professionals who are trained and experienced in mediation and arbitration. BBB AUTO LINE will arbitrate your case by reviewing the facts; inspecting the vehicle, if necessary; and promptly rendering a fair and equitable decision.

What types of disputes are eligible?

BBB AUTO LINE resolves disputes involving Lexus product reliability and warranty performance that arise during the greater of 1) four years or 50,000 miles from the vehicle’s in-service date, whichever is earlier; or 2) the applicable provision of the Lexus New Vehicle Limited Warranty. However, BBB AUTO LINE will not arbitrate claims involving a vehicle used primarily for commercial purposes unless the “Lemon Law” of your state covers 1) vehicles used for commercial purposes or 2) claims that an air bag failed to deploy or deployed when it should not have. You must file a request for arbitration with BBB AUTO LINE within six months of the expiration of the eligibility period.

How long is the arbitration process?

The entire process — from the time BBB AUTO LINE receives your request for arbitration to the arbitrator's decision — is designed to take no more than 40 days. A decision may be delayed if:

- You fail to provide certain information required by BBB AUTO LINE.
- You fail to make your vehicle available for inspection by BBB AUTO LINE in a timely manner (if an inspection is necessary).
- You fail to contact Lexus about your dispute before requesting arbitration.

How much will it cost?

There is no charge to you for submitting your dispute to BBB AUTO LINE. You may obtain copies of your case for a nominal fee.

How does the arbitration process work?

When BBB AUTO LINE receives your request, it will be forwarded to the Lexus area office for response.

After analyzing all information pertaining to your case, BBB AUTO LINE will schedule a technical evaluation if applicable. This may include an inspection of the vehicle by a technical expert. The technical expert will forward his or her evaluation to BBB AUTO LINE.

An oral hearing will be held prior to a decision being rendered. At this hearing, all evidence is admissible. You and a Lexus representative will present both sides of the case to the BBB AUTO LINE arbitrator(s). You will each be allotted time to give testimony and provide documents. Then you will each be given an opportunity for rebuttal. After considering all testimony

and documents, the arbitrator(s) will review the applicable legal standards and render a decision within 10 days.

A settlement satisfactory to all parties may be negotiated prior to submission of the case to the arbitrator, or during the hearing.

What types of decisions are rendered, and how do I know if Lexus will abide by BBB AUTO LINE's decision?

BBB AUTO LINE's decisions are based on what it believes to be fair and appropriate after applying the appropriate legal standards. Remedies include but are not limited to repairs; reimbursement for repairs and incidental expenses, such as towing costs; and repurchase or replacement of your vehicle.

BBB AUTO LINE's decision is binding on Lexus but not on you. Lexus must comply with the decision shortly after it is rendered, usually within 30 days. BBB AUTO LINE will contact you within 10 days of scheduled compliance to ensure that Lexus has complied in a timely manner.

Are there limits to the scope of BBB AUTO LINE decisions?

BBB AUTO LINE decisions do not include:

- Attorney fees
- Punitive damages
- Multiple damages
- Consequential damages, other than incidental damages to which you may be entitled under law

What other recourse do I have?

If you are dissatisfied with the arbitrator's decision or Lexus' compliance, you may pursue any other legal remedies available to you, including small claims court. You should be aware that BBB AUTO LINE findings are admissible as evidence in any legal proceedings concerning your vehicle.

Is BBB AUTO LINE subject to change?

This information about BBB AUTO LINE is correct as of the date of printing. However, the program may be changed without notice. For the most current information, call BBB AUTO LINE at (800)955-5100 or the Lexus Customer Satisfaction Department at (800)255-3987.

GAS STATION INFORMATION

- **Fuel selection:**

Select premium unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher for optimum engine performance. However, if such premium type cannot be obtained, you may temporarily use unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating as low as 87 (Research Octane Number 91).

- **Fuel tank capacity:**

75 L (19.8 gal., 16.5 Imp.gal.)

- **Engine oil:**

API SJ, "Energy-Conserving" multigrade engine oil or ILSAC multigrade engine oil.

Recommend oil viscosity – SAE 5W-30 if normal temperatures are below 38°C (100°F)

Oil capacity: L (qt., Imp.qt.)

Drain and refill	GS430	GS300
with filter	5.2 (5.5, 4.6)	5.4 (5.7, 4.8)
without filter	4.9 (5.2, 4.3)	5.1 (5.4, 4.5)

See page 253 for detailed information.

- **Engine coolant:**

Capacity: GS430: 9.0 L (9.5 qt., 7.9 Imp.qt.)

GS300: 7.7 L (8.1 qt., 6.8 Imp.qt.)

Coolant type – "Toyota Long Life Coolant" or equivalent

With ethylene-glycol type coolant for a proper corrosion protection of aluminum components

For checking the engine coolant, see page 255.

Do not use alcohol type antifreeze or plain water alone.

- **Automatic transmission:**

Fluid type – **Automatic transmission fluid Type T-IV**

See page 260 or 263 for detailed information.

- **Tire information:**

See page 271 through 277 for detailed information.

- **Tire pressure:**

Tire size: GS430 – 225/55R16 94V or 235/45ZR17

GS300 – P215/60R16 94V or 225/55R16 94V

Tire pressure: cold tires
kPa (kgf/cm² or bar, psi)

<u>Tire size</u>	<u>Front</u>	<u>Rear</u>
P215/60R16 94V	210 (2.1, 30)	210 (2.1, 30)
225/55R16 94V	220 (2.2, 32)	220 (2.2, 32)
235/45ZR17	230 (2.3, 33)	230 (2.3, 33)

For sustained high speeds above 160 km/h (100 mph), in countries where such speeds are permitted by law, add the tire pressure given below to the front tires and rear tires, but never exceed the maximum cold tire pressure molded on the tire sidewall.

GS430: 70kPa (0.8 kgf/cm², 0.7 bar, 10 psi)

GS300:

P215/60R16 94V	90kPa (1.0 kgf/cm ² , 0.9 bar, 13 psi)
225/55R16 94V	80kPa (0.9 kgf/cm ² , 0.8 bar, 12 psi)